

CAMBRIDGE

مرجع زبان ایرانیان  
www.irLanguage.com

# English Vocabulary in Use

## Elementary

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Vocabulary reference  
and practice

With answers

www.irLanguage.com

A2

English  
Profile

Second Edition

Michael McCarthy  
Felicity O'Dell



CD-ROM

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان  
  
www.irLanguage.com

# English Vocabulary **in** Use

Elementary

مرجع زبان ایرانیان  
[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

**SECOND  
EDITION**

*with answers  
and CD-ROM*

**Michael McCarthy  
Felicity O'Dell**



 **CAMBRIDGE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS**

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

# Contents

Thanks and acknowledgements 5

Introduction 6

## People

1 The family *mother, uncle, relatives* 8

2 Birth, marriage and death *birthday, married, die* 10

3 Parts of the body *head, foot, shoulder* 12

4 Clothes *hat, shirt, trousers* 14

5 Describing people *tall, dark, good-looking* 16

6 Health and illness *headache, heart attack, exercise* 18

7 Feelings *love, tired, thirsty* 20

8 Conversations 1: Greetings and wishes *Good morning, Happy New Year, well done* 22

9 Conversations 2: Useful words and expressions *I don't mind, anyway, let's* 24

## At home

10 Food and drink *rice, tea, vegetables* 26

11 In the kitchen *fridge, glass, saucepan* 28

12 In the bedroom and bathroom *wardrobe, shampoo, mirror* 30

13 In the living room *bookshelf, lamp, remote control* 32

## School and workplace

14 Jobs *secretary, factory, nurse* 34

15 At school and university *biology, notebook, pass an exam* 36

16 Communications *address, computer, memory stick* 38

## Leisure

17 Holidays *package holiday, phrasebook, visa* 40

18 Shops and shopping *chemist's, department store, credit card* 42

19 In a hotel *single room, key, luggage* 44

20 Eating out *café, menu, fish and chips* 46

21 Sports *table tennis, judo, volleyball* 48

22 Cinema *western, film star, DVD* 50

23 Free time at home *gardening, listening to CDs, programme* 52

24 Music and musical instruments *guitar, jazz, orchestra* 54

## The world

25 Countries and nationalities *Spain, Chinese, continent* 56

26 Weather *cold, rain, storm* 58

27 In the town *railway station, bank, town hall* 60

28 In the countryside *hill, farm, river* 62

29 Animals *horse, giraffe, pet* 64

30 Travelling *train, map, flight* 66

31 UK culture *fireworks, roast beef, Christmas* 68

## Social issues

32 Crime *murder, prison, guilty* 70

33 The media *TV channel, magazine, talk show* 72

34 Problems at home and work *repair, untidy, in a bad mood* 74

35 Global problems *hurricane, war, strike* 76

## Everyday verbs

- 36** Have / had / had *have breakfast, have time, have a swim* 78
- 37** Go / went / gone *go away, go shopping, go home* 80
- 38** Do / did / done *do an exercise, do your best, do the washing* 82
- 39** Make / made / made *make coffee, make a mistake, make a noise* 84
- 40** Come / came / come *come in, come from, come back* 86
- 41** Take / took / taken *take the bus, take a photo, take an exam* 88
- 42** Bring / brought / brought *bring something here, bring back, take* 90
- 43** Get / got / got *get tired, get better, get married* 92
- 44** Phrasal verbs *get up, put on, turn down* 94
- 45** Everyday things *watch TV, wash clothes, go for a walk* 96
- 46** Talking *say, tell, ask* 98
- 47** Moving *walk, drive, fly* 100

## Words and grammar

- 48** Talking about language *noun, verb, plural* 102
- 49** Conjunctions and connecting words *because, only, before* 104
- 50** Days, months, seasons *Monday, July, winter* 106
- 51** Time words *next year, often, once a week* 108
- 52** Places *middle, front, abroad* 110
- 53** Manner *fast, loud, the right way* 112
- 54** Common uncountable nouns *money, bread, information* 114
- 55** Common adjectives 1: Good and bad things *nice, awful, lovely* 116
- 56** Common adjectives 2: People *happy, horrible, intelligent* 118
- 57** Words and prepositions *wait for, belong to, good at* 120
- 58** Prefixes *impossible, ex-president, unsafe* 122
- 59** Suffixes *swimmer, useless, sunny* 124
- 60** Words you may confuse *quiet / quite, lend / borrow, cook / cooker* 126

<b>Answer key</b>	128
<b>Phonemic symbols</b>	158
<b>Index</b>	159
<b>Irregular verbs</b>	170
<b>How to learn vocabulary</b>	172
<b>How to use the CD-ROM</b>	173

# Thanks and acknowledgements

A book like this owes a great deal to many people.

Many thanks are due to the editorial team under Nóirín Burke at Cambridge University Press who steered this book through the preparation of this new edition. We are particularly grateful to Caroline Thiriau, Hazel Meek, Emily Hird and Alison Silver, who have provided us at different stages of the process with generous help and guidance. Thanks are also due to Jeanette Alfoldi and the production team, and Lucy Mordini for the proofreading.

Our domestic partners as always get a special thank you for their tolerance and support. It is a great sadness that Vlad will not be able to enjoy seeing the final copies of a book that he did more to help produce than he could ever have realised.

We would also like to thank the teachers and students who participated in focus groups at the following institutions:

UK

Bell School, Cambridge  
Cambridge Academy of English, Cambridge  
Regent, London  
Oxford College International, London

Belgium

UCL, Louvain-la-Neuve  
ULB, Brussels  
British Council, Brussels  
University of Namur

Russia

Sodruzhestvo School, Moscow  
EF language school, Zhulebino, Moscow  
Moscow State University  
BKC – International House (IH), Moscow

Michael McCarthy  
Felicity O'Dell

Cambridge, September 2009

Development of this publication has made use of the Cambridge International Corpus (CIC). The CIC is a computer database of contemporary spoken and written English, which currently stands at over one billion words. It includes British English, American English and other varieties of English. It also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, developed in collaboration with the University of Cambridge ESOL Examinations. Cambridge University Press has built up the CIC to provide evidence about language use that helps to produce better language teaching materials.

Illustrations by: Amanda Macphail, Gary Wing, Gillian Martin, Humberto Blanco, Jo Taylor, Kathy Baxendale, Vicky Woodgate, Kate Charlesworth, Kathryn Baker, Mark Duffin

# Introduction

## To the student

This book will help you learn around 1,250 new words and phrases. You can use the book yourself, without a teacher. You can do the units in any order you like. The CD-ROM includes practice exercises, games and tests (see page 173).

Here is what the pages look like:

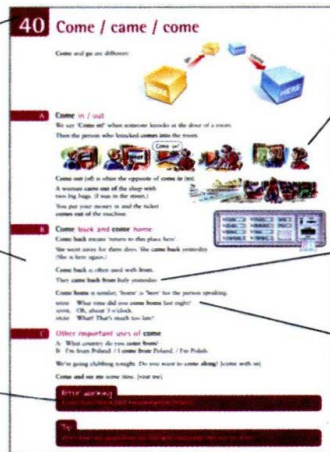
The left-hand page presents the new vocabulary.

The left-hand page is divided into sections.

Error warnings and learning tips are also given on the left-hand page.

The right-hand page practises the new vocabulary.

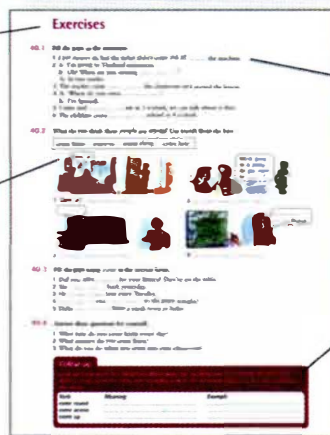
Pictures, tables and diagrams give variety to the exercises.



Diagrams and pictures show the meaning.

Example sentences show the words in context.

Mini-dialogues show how people use the words in real situations.



A lot of different exercise types are used: gap-fills, answering questions, matching, etc.

Follow-up tasks give you a chance to do more work on the topic of the unit.

The Answer key at the end of the book is for you to check your answers to the exercises after you do them. The Answer key sometimes has more than one answer. This is because there is often not just one correct way of saying something. The Answer key also has possible answers for most of the exercises which are open-ended, or where you are asked to talk about yourself.

The Index at the end of the book has all the important words and phrases from the left-hand pages. The Index also tells you how to pronounce words. There is a list of phonemic symbols to help you understand the pronunciation on page 158.

It is a good idea to have a dictionary with you when you use the book so you can check the meaning of something, or translate a word into your own language. Sometimes, you will also need a dictionary for the exercises; we tell you when this is so. You also need a vocabulary notebook to write down new words. See page 172 for ideas on how to learn and remember these new words.

We hope you like this book. When you have finished all the units in this book, you can test yourself using the book of tests that accompanies this book, *Test Your Vocabulary in Use Elementary Second Edition*. Then you can go to the next book in the series, *English Vocabulary in Use: Pre-intermediate and intermediate*, and after that, to the higher levels, *English Vocabulary in Use: Upper-intermediate* and *English Vocabulary in Use: Advanced*.

## To the teacher

This book can be used in class or as a self-study book. It is intended for learners at A1–A2 levels of the Council of Europe scale. It aims to take learners with a very basic level of vocabulary to a point where they can use approximately 2,000 words and phrases and teaches them around 1,250 new words and phrases. The vocabulary has been chosen for its usefulness in everyday situations, and we consulted a written and spoken corpus of present-day English to help us decide on the words and phrases to be included. The new vocabulary (on average 20–30 items per unit) is presented with illustrations and explanations on the left-hand page, and there are exercises and activities on the right-hand page. There is an Answer key and an Index with pronunciation for all the key vocabulary.

The book focuses not just on single words, but also on useful phrases and collocations. For example, difficult teaching points such as the difference between *do* and *make* are dealt with through collocation (we *do* our homework, but we *make* mistakes), and useful phrases (e.g. *come along*) are presented.

The book is organised around everyday topics, but also has units devoted to core verbs such as *get* and *bring / take*. Typical errors are indicated where appropriate, and the most typical meanings and uses are focused on for each key item. The units in the book can be used in any order you like, but it is often a good idea to do blocks of units based round the same topic (e.g. *People, At home, Leisure*).

The right-hand pages offer a variety of different types of activities, including traditional ones such as gap-filling, but also more open-ended ones and personalised activities which enable learners to talk about their own lives. Although the activities and exercises are designed for self-study, they can easily be adapted for pairwork, groupwork or whole-class activities in the usual ways. For example, where there are dialogues, students can take the speaking parts and practise the conversations, and where the exercises have questions and answers, students can practise asking each other the questions and answering them. See who has the best ideas for recording vocabulary in their notebook. The Answer key sometimes gives alternative answers to the exercises, and also gives possible model answers for the more personalised ones.

When the learners have worked through a group of units, it is a good idea to repeat some of the work (for example, the exercises) and to expand on the meaning and use of key words and phrases by extra discussion in class, and find other examples of the key items in other texts and situations. This can be done at intervals of one to three months after first working on a unit. This is important, since it is usually the case that learners need five to seven exposures to a word or phrase before they can really know it, and no single book can do enough to ensure that words are always learnt first time.

When your students have finished all the units in this book, they can test themselves using the book of tests that accompanies this book, *Test Your Vocabulary in Use Elementary Second Edition*. They will then be ready to move on to the next book in this series: *English Vocabulary in Use: Pre-intermediate and intermediate*, by Stuart Redman.

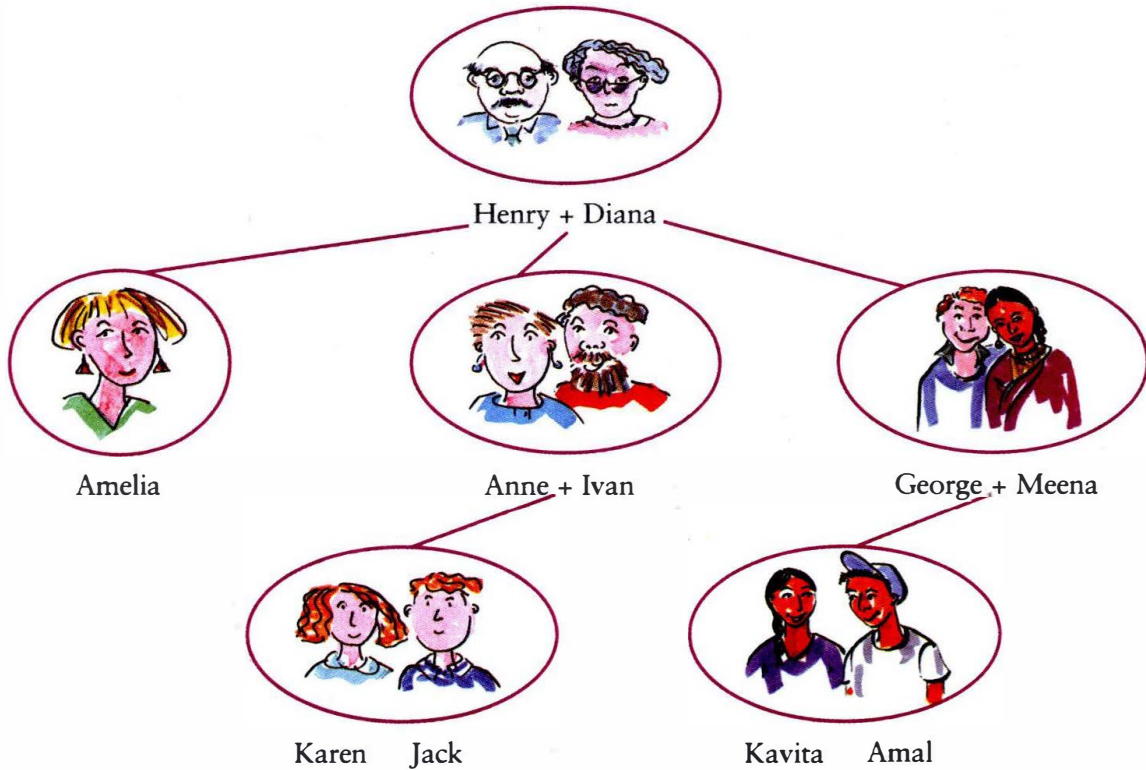
Find more resources for teachers at [www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse](http://www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse)

We hope you enjoy using the book.

# 1 The family

## A Family words مرجع زبان ایرانیان

A family tree for some of Anne and Ivan Sorokin's relatives or relations.



### Ivan and Anne and their children

Ivan is Anne's **husband** and Karen and Jack's **father**.  
Anne is Ivan's **wife** and Karen and Jack's **mother**.  
Anne and Ivan are Karen and Jack's **parents**.  
Karen is Anne and Ivan's **daughter**. Jack is their **son**.  
Karen is Jack's **sister**. Jack is Karen's **brother**.

### Henry and Diana

Henry is Karen and Jack's **grandfather**. Diana is their **grandmother**.  
Henry and Diana are Karen and Jack's **grandparents**.  
Karen is their **granddaughter**. Jack is their **grandson**.

### Amelia, George and Meena

George is Karen and Jack's **uncle**.  
Amelia and Meena are Karen and Jack's **aunts**.  
Karen is Amelia, George and Meena's **niece**. Jack is their **nephew**.  
Kavita and Amal are Karen and Jack's **cousins**.

## B Expressions

Have you got any brothers and sisters? No, I am an **only child**.

Do you come from a big family? Yes, I have three brothers and two sisters.

### Error warning

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

We say 'my/his wife' (singular) but 'our/their wives' (plural).



# Exercises

**1.1** Look at the family tree on the opposite page. Complete the sentences.

- 1 Kavita is Amal's sister.....
- 2 Amal is Kavita's .....
- 3 Anne is Kavita's .....
- 4 Ivan is Amal's .....
- 5 Diana is Amal's .....
- 6 Henry is Kavita's .....
- 7 Amal is Ivan's .....
- 8 Kavita is Ivan's .....
- 9 Meena is Kavita's .....
- 10 Meena is George's .....
- 11 Karen is Amal's .....

**1.2** The Sorokins have some other relatives. Complete the sentences about them.



Sanjay

Alexander and Leila

Meena has a brother, Sanjay. Sanjay is Kavita and Amal's <sup>1</sup>uncle..... and Sanjay's wife is their <sup>2</sup>..... . Sanjay and his wife have one son, Prem. Prem is an <sup>3</sup>..... .

Henry's parents are still alive. Alexander is Henry's <sup>4</sup>..... and his <sup>5</sup>..... Leila is Henry's <sup>6</sup>..... . Alexander and Leila have three <sup>7</sup>..... – Amelia, Ivan and George. Ivan and George and their <sup>8</sup>..... , Anne and Meena, love their <sup>9</sup>..... and visit them as often as possible.

**1.3** Ask a friend these questions. Then write sentences about your friend and their family. For example, *Chen has one brother but no sisters.*

- 1 Have you got any brothers and sisters?
- 2 Have you got any cousins?
- 3 Have you got any nieces or nephews?
- 4 Have you got any grandparents?
- 5 Do you come from a big family?

**1.4** Cover the opposite page. How many family words can you write down in two minutes? Check what you wrote carefully with the book. Did you spell everything correctly? Which words did you forget?

## Follow-up

Draw your family tree. Then write sentences. Write about your relations. *Anne is my mother.* Use a dictionary to help you.

## 2 Birth, marriage and death

### A Birth

Anna had a baby yesterday.  
He was born at 1.15 yesterday morning.  
He weighed 3 kilograms.



They are going to call him John – after John, his grandfather. His grandfather's birthday is June 16th too – but he was born in 1945!

The baby's parents were born in 1974.

#### Error warning

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

We say: Anna had a baby [NOT Anna got a baby]. We say: He/She was born [NOT He/She born or He/She is born].

### B Marriage

If you do not have a partner, you are single.  
If you have a husband or wife, you are married.  
If your husband or wife dies, you are widowed.  
If your marriage breaks up, you are separated / divorced. (the marriage has legally ended)

Bill and Sarah got married.

The wedding



www.irLanguage.com

#### Error warning

Sarah got married to Bill [NOT with Bill].

They (got) married in 1988. (*married* without *got* is more formal)

They went on their honeymoon to Italy.

They were married for 20 years.

### C Death

Then Bill became ill.  
He died last year.  
He died of a heart attack.

#### Error warning

Bill is dead [NOT Bill is died or Bill is death].



The funeral

# Exercises

## 2.1 Think of people you know. Where were they born? When?

- 1 My mother was born in Scotland on July 4th 1957.
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....

## 2.2 Find a word on the opposite page which means ...

- 1 the name for a woman on her wedding day. *bride*
- 2 the name for a man on his wedding day.
- 3 what you are if you haven't got a partner.
- 4 to be 57 kilograms.
- 5 what you are if your marriage has legally ended.
- 6 a religious service for a dead person.
- 7 a holiday after a wedding.
- 8 what you are if your husband or wife dies.

## 2.3 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

**in**    **after**    **of**    **to**    **born**    **on**

<sup>1</sup> In ..... 2003 Anne got married <sup>2</sup> ..... Robert Smith. Unfortunately, Robert's grandmother, Rosemary Smith, died <sup>3</sup> ..... old age soon after their wedding. Robert and Anne were <sup>4</sup> ..... their honeymoon when she died. Anne's baby daughter was <sup>5</sup> ..... two years later. They called the baby Rosemary, <sup>6</sup> ..... Robert's grandmother.

## 2.4 When were these people born and when did they die? Write sentences.

- 1 Genghis Khan (1162–1227) Genghis Khan was born in 1162 and died in 1227.
- 2 Christopher Columbus (1451–1506)
- 3 Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519)
- 4 Princess Diana (1961–1997)
- 5 Heath Ledger (1979–2008)



## 2.5 Complete the sentences using *died*, *dead* or *death*.

- 1 Jill's grandfather *died* ..... last year.
- 2 His ..... made her very sad.
- 3 Her grandmother has been ..... for five years now.
- 4 She ..... of a heart attack.
- 5 Now all Jill's grandparents are .....

## 2.6 Write about your family. Use words and expressions from the opposite page.

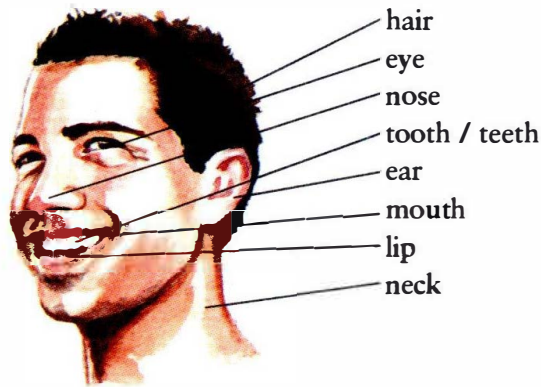
Here are some ideas for making your sentences.

I have ..... I/my .....  
got married in ..... (year).  
For my/his/her honeymoon, I/he/she went  
to .....

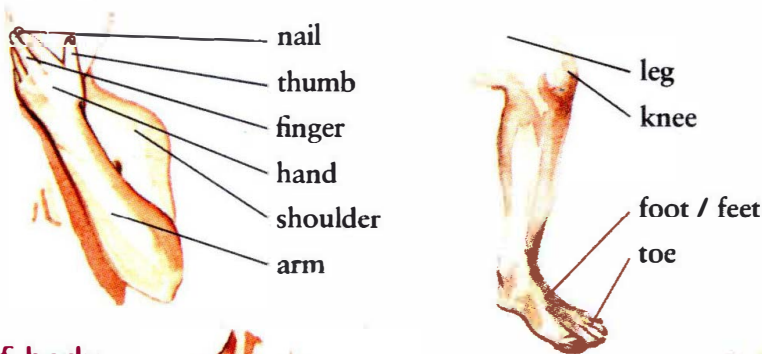
I have / my ..... has .....  
children. They were born in .....  
and ..... (years).

# 3 Parts of the body

## A Head and face

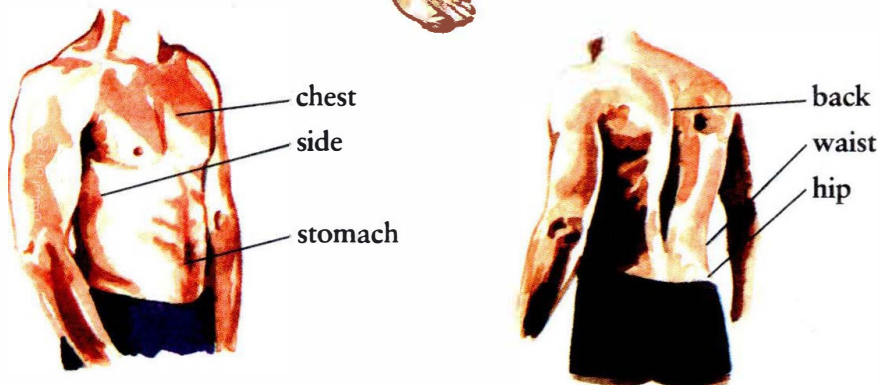


## B Arm and leg

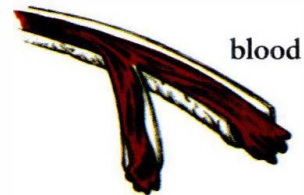
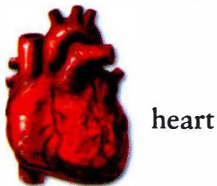


## C Rest of body

We have skin covering our bodies.



## D Inside the body



## E Pronunciation problems

eye /aɪ/ knee /ni:/ stomach /'stʌmək/ heart /hɑ:t/ blood /blʌd/ foot /fʊt/ tooth /tu:θ/

## F Singular and plurals

one foot – two feet      one tooth – two teeth

Hair is a singular word. My hair is very long – I must cut it soon.

### Error warning

Usually we use *my*, *your*, *his*, *her*, etc. with parts of the body. Jane is washing her hair [NOT Jane is washing ~~the~~ hair]. I have a pain in my leg [NOT I have a pain in ~~the~~ leg].  
(See Unit 6: Health and illness.)

# Exercises

**3.1** Here are the names of some parts of the body with the letters mixed up. What are they?

- |            |             |          |       |
|------------|-------------|----------|-------|
| 1 eken     | <u>knee</u> | 6 are    | ..... |
| 2 osen     | .....       | 7 hotot  | ..... |
| 3 rathe    | .....       | 8 buhtm  | ..... |
| 4 hamcost  | .....       | 9 akbc   | ..... |
| 5 olderush | .....       | 10 tiwas | ..... |

**3.2** Complete these sentences with words from the opposite page.

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1 A hand has five <u>fingers</u> . | 6 You hear with your .....              |
| 2 A foot has five .....            | 7 The child sat on her father's .....   |
| 3 An adult has 32 .....            | 8 Your ..... type can be A, B, AB or O. |
| 4 You smell with your .....        | 9 You think with your .....             |
| 5 The ..... is a symbol of love.   |   |

**3.3** Correct the mistakes in the sentences.






- I have a pain in ~~the~~ side. I have a pain in my side.
- That woman has got very big foots.
- My grandfather has a pain in the shoulder.
- The baby has already got two tooths.
- The little girl needs to wash the face and the hands before dinner.
- My hairs are dirty. I need to wash them.

**3.4** Parts of the body are often used in compound nouns too. Complete these nouns with a word from the opposite page.

- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
|  |  |  |
| 1 <u>arm</u> chair  | 3 ..... stick   | 5 ..... scarf   |
|  |  |  |
| 2 ..... ball  | 4 ..... brush   | 6 ..... bag   |

## Follow-up

Parts of the body words are used in other ways too.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1  A chair has arms, legs and a back. Where do you think they are?<br>a its back | 4  This is a bottle. Where is its neck?   |
| 2  This is a needle. Where is its eye?   | 5  This is a mountain. Where is its foot? |
| 3  This is a clock. Where is its face? Where are its hands?                      |   |

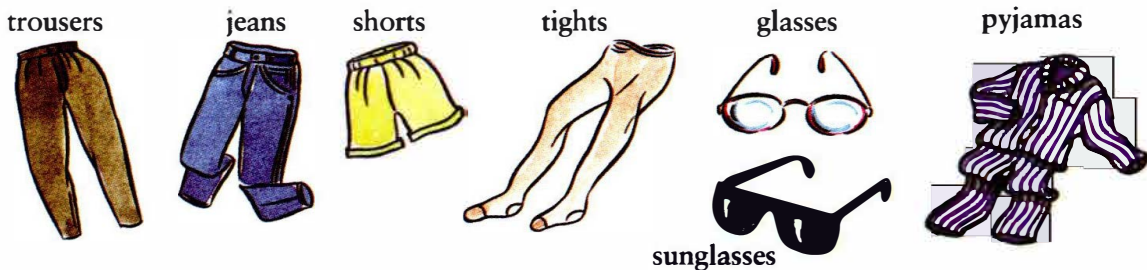
# 4 Clothes

## A Clothes



## B Plural words

These words are always plural in English. They need a plural verb.



My suit is new but these trousers are old. Her jeans / shorts / tights are blue.

*Note:* You say: a pair of trousers / shorts / glasses, etc.

## C Verbs

You wear clothes but you carry things.

You wear glasses.

Naomi is wearing a long red coat. She's carrying a suitcase and a small handbag.

You can also say: Naomi has (got) a red coat on.

You carry a bag and an umbrella.



In the morning you get dressed or put your clothes on. At night you get undressed or you take your clothes off.

### Error warning

You put clothes on but you take clothes off [NOT put-clothes-off].

### Tip

When you get dressed in the morning, say to yourself *Now I'm putting on my socks. Now I'm putting on my shoes and so on.*

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

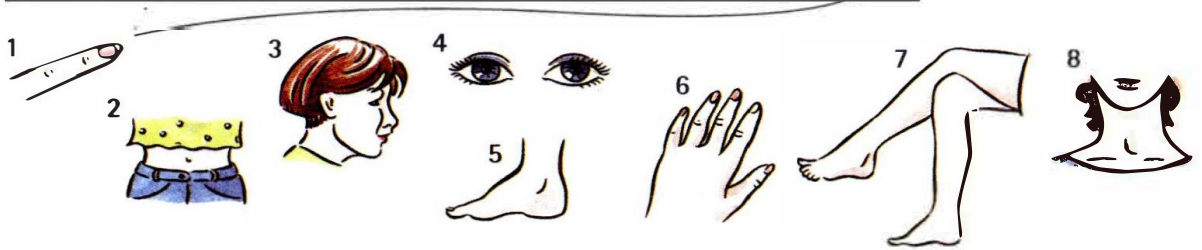
# Exercises

## 4.1 Complete the sentences.

- Joe has a job interview today, so he's wearing a smart suit..... , a white shirt..... and a tie.....
- Julia's not working today, so she's wearing a T-shirt..... and shorts.....
- Liz is going to play tennis. She's wearing white socks..... and trainers.....
- Gianni is going to a business meeting. He's .....ing a briefcase..... with his papers and laptop.
- My trousers are too big. I have to wear a belt.....
- It's cold today. I'll wear my jacket..... , and I'll take my coat..... too.

## 4.2 Match the item of clothing with the part of the body.

scarf    belt    shoe    hat    glove    glasses    tights    ring

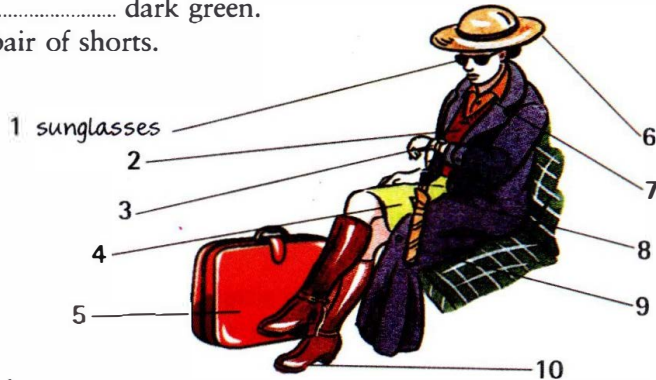


## 4.3 Complete the sentences with one of the verbs in the box and put it in the right form.

be    wear    carry    have

- Nick's jeans are..... blue and his T-shirt ..... red.
- Julia ..... jeans and a T-shirt today.
- Meena ..... got a red coat on and she ..... some flowers.
- Sarah's dress ..... old but her shoes ..... new.
- Last year Jim's trousers ..... white. Now they ..... grey.
- ..... this a new pair of jeans?
- My favourite pyjamas ..... dark green.
- Kim ..... a new pair of shorts.

## 4.4 Label the picture.



## 4.5 Complete the verbs in the table.

morning	night
get <u>dressed</u> .....	get .....
or put .....	or ..... your clothes off

## 4.6 What are you wearing today? Use a dictionary to help you.

I'm wearing a white T-shirt and a blue jumper. I've got a pair of black trousers on. I'm wearing blue socks and white trainers. I've also got a watch and a pair of glasses on.

# 5 Describing people

## A Height /haɪt/ and weight /weɪt/

Bettina Schwenke is a very tall woman.

Tom Jakes is quite short.

If you aren't tall or short, you are of medium height.

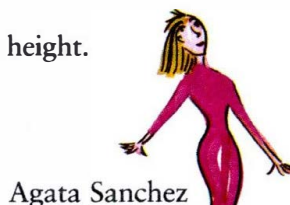
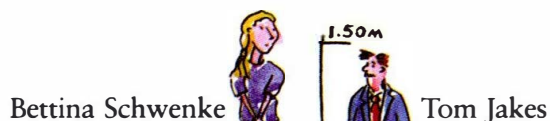
Agata Sanchez is really slim.

I was very thin when I was in hospital.

[slim is more polite than thin]

The doctor said I am overweight. [weigh too much]

An overweight man holding a fat cat opened the door.



## B Face and head

Suri has dark skin and dark hair. She has brown eyes.

Polly has blonde (or fair) hair and fair skin. She has blue eyes.

Beat has a beard and long hair. He has green eyes.

Luca has a moustache /mʊ'stɑːf/ and short hair.

You can also use has got, for example, Suri has got dark hair and dark skin.



### Error warning

People are tall [NOT People are high].

People have blonde or dark hair [NOT hairs].

My mother is a very beautiful woman. [very pretty]

My dad's a very good-looking man.

My sister is pretty. (usually girls / women only)

Bob's an ugly man. [ugly = the opposite of beautiful or good-looking]

I'm not ugly or beautiful, I'm just average-looking!

## C Age

My grandmother is 97. She's very old. My sister is 14. She's young, but would like to be older. My father is 56. He's middle-aged, but would like to be younger!

This hospital is for elderly people. (more polite than old)

## D Expressions

A: How tall is Bettina / Tom? B: She's 1.85 metres tall. / He's 1.48 metres tall.

A: How heavy are you? / How much do you weigh? B: I weigh 62 kilos / 74 kilos, etc.

A: How old is he? B: He's 84.

A: What does Gemma / your sister look like?

B: She's tall and dark. She's very pretty.

### Tip

Some of the words on this page are a little negative, so be careful how you use them. It's better not to say to someone: 'You are fat / thin / ugly / old!'



# Exercises

## 5.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 He's only 1 metre 52. He's quite *short* .....
- 2 Very ..... people are often good at basketball.
- 3 Models are usually .....
- 4 Does she have dark skin? No, it's .....
- 5 She's only seven. She's very .....
- 6 If I eat too much I'll be .....
- 7 My grandmother is in this hospital. It's a hospital for ..... people. (don't use 'old')

## 5.2 Complete the questions using the words in brackets ( ).

- 1 *How tall is your brother?* ..... (your brother)  
He's about 1 metre 75.
- 2 Is ..... ? (Elena's hair)  
No, she's got dark hair.
- 3 Is ..... ? (Mike's hair)  
Yes, it is quite long.
- 4 Are ..... ? (your parents)  
Not really, they're middle-aged.
- 5 Is ..... ? (his sister)  
Yes, she's very pretty.
- 6 Why ..... ? (Sara, so thin)  
She's very ill.

## 5.3 Write sentences about the people in these pictures.



Suzanna



Jeff



Caroline



Stefan

- 1 Suzanna's *got long blonde hair and fair skin* .....
- 2 Jeff has .....
- 3 Caroline's got .....
- 4 Stefan's hair is ..... and he .....

## 5.4 Write questions.

- 1 your brother, height *How tall is your brother?* .....
- 2 your teacher, looks .....
- 3 you, weight .....
- 4 your mother, age .....
- 5 your sister, height .....
- 6 your parents, looks .....

## 5.5 Now write answers to the questions in 5.4.

- 1 He's not very tall. He's 1 metre 52.

### Follow-up

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

www.irLanguage.com

Write down the names of three people you know. Then write about their:

- height (tall, short, medium height)
- eyes (colour)
- hair (colour, long, short, beard)
- looks (ordinary, good-looking, ugly, etc.)

# 6 Health and illness

## A How are you today?

I'm very well, thanks.

I'm fine, thanks.

I don't feel very well. I must go home and rest. (I'll probably be OK tomorrow.)

I feel ill. Can you get a doctor, please? (Perhaps it's a serious problem.)

That fish was bad. I think I'm going to be sick! (I want to vomit.)

## B Everyday problems

Have you got an aspirin? I've got a headache. /'hedɪk/



I've got toothache. /'tu:θ eɪk/ I need to go to the dentist.



I'm going to bed with a hot drink. I've got a cold.



## C Problems people have for many years / all their lives

I get hay fever every summer, from flowers and grass. I sneeze all day. /sni:z/

My little brother has asthma; sometimes he can't breathe. /'æsmə/



## D Illnesses in hot / tropical countries



mosquito

In some countries, mosquitoes can give people malaria. /mə'leəriə/

The drinking water was bad, and many children had cholera. /'kɒlərə/

## E Serious illnesses

Every year cancer kills many people who smoke. /'kænsə/

### Error warning

My father had a heart attack  
[NOT got a heart attack].



## F Expressions

A: Do you have a healthy diet?

B: Yes, I eat lots of fruit and vegetables.

A: Do you exercise?

B: Yes, I like swimming, jogging and cycling. They're really good for you.

A: I feel stressed!

B: Do you? You need to relax more and don't panic about work!

# Exercises

## 6.1 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: How are you today?  
B: ~~Very well, thanks~~.....  
A: Good!
- 2 A: Are you OK?  
B: No, .....  
A: Would you like to use the bathroom?  
B: Yes, thank you.
- 3 A: I .....  
B: I'll get a doctor.  
A: Oh, thank you.
- 4 A: .....  
B: Here's the dentist's phone number.  
A: Thanks.
- 5 A: Your nose is red. Have you got .....  
B: Yes.  
A: Have a hot drink and go to bed early.

## 6.2 Match the illnesses in the table with a possible treatment.

go to the dentist    ~~take an aspirin~~    go to hospital    go to bed with a hot drink

illness	treatment
a headache	take an aspirin
toothache	
a heart attack	
a cold	

## 6.3 What illnesses are connected with ...

- 1 a mosquito bite? *malaria*
- 2 bad drinking water?
- 3 pollution, traffic fumes, etc.?
- 4 grass, flowers, etc.?
- 5 smoking, sunshine, etc.?

## 6.4 Answer these questions. Use a dictionary to help you.

- 1 Do you have a healthy diet?
- 2 What exercise do you do?
- 3 Do you often feel stressed?
- 4 Have you ever been in hospital?

# 7 Feelings

## A Love, like and hate



++  
love

+  
like

-  
don't like

--  
hate

I love my family and my best friend.

I like my job.

I don't like horror films.

I hate spiders.



## B Happy, sad and tired



happy



sad



angry



upset



cold



hot



thirsty



hungry



well



ill



tired



surprised

### Error warning

I am very happy about your news [NOT I am very happy for your news]. BUT You did very well in your exam - I'm very happy for you.

## C Prefer, hope and want

I prefer coffee to tea. (= I like coffee more than I like tea.)

I hope to do well in my exam.

I hope (that) my friend does well in his exam.

I want a new car. [I would like]

I want to buy a new car.

Note: I want my father to buy a new car.

### Error warning

I want you to help me [NOT I want that you help me].

## D Expressions

A: Do you like football?

B: Yes, I really like football / it. /

No, I don't like football / it very much.

A: How's your grandfather?

B: He's very well, thanks.

A: And how about your grandmother?

B: She's a bit / a little tired.

### Error warning

[NOT I very like football / it. or I like very much football / it.]

# Exercises

## 7.1 Do you love, like, not like or hate these things? Write sentences.

- |                |                   |              |
|----------------|-------------------|--------------|
| 1 chocolate    | I love chocolate. | 5 football   |
| 2 cowboy films |                   | 6 cats       |
| 3 flying       |                   | 7 cars       |
| 4 tea          |                   | 8 jazz music |







## 7.2 Which do you prefer? Write answers.

- |                              |                         |                                      |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 tea or coffee?             | I prefer coffee to tea. | 4 cars or bikes?                     |
| 2 dogs or cats?              |                         | 5 strawberry or chocolate ice cream? |
| 3 sunbathing or sightseeing? |                         | 6 watching sport or doing sport?     |

## 7.3 Answer these questions using *want* or *hope*.

- You're thirsty. What do you want? I want a cup of tea.
- The lesson feels very long. What do you hope?
- You're hungry. What do you want?
- Your friend feels ill. What do you hope?
- You're tired. What do you want to do?
- You're upset. What do you want to do?
- It's very cold weather. What do you hope?
- Your friend feels sad. What do you want?

## 7.4 Look at the pictures. How do the people feel? Use words from B opposite.

- |   |                        |  |                    |
|---|------------------------|--|--------------------|
| 1  | Jessica is hungry..... | 4  | Sunita .....       |
| 2  | Fred .....             | 5  | Fiona .....        |
| 3  | William .....          | 6  | The children ..... |

## 7.5 Correct the mistakes.

- I very like basketball. I like basketball very much.
- I am happy for my sister's good news.
- The teacher wants that we learn these new words.
- I like really spiders.
- My brother has a good new job. I'm very happy about him.
- My parents want that I go to university.
- I feel very well. How for you?
- Priya is bit tired this morning.

### Follow-up

When did you last feel ...

1 angry? 2 surprised? 3 upset? 4 hungry?

I felt angry this morning when I read the newspaper.

# 8 Conversations 1: Greetings and wishes

## A Every day



good morning



good afternoon



good evening



### Error warning

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

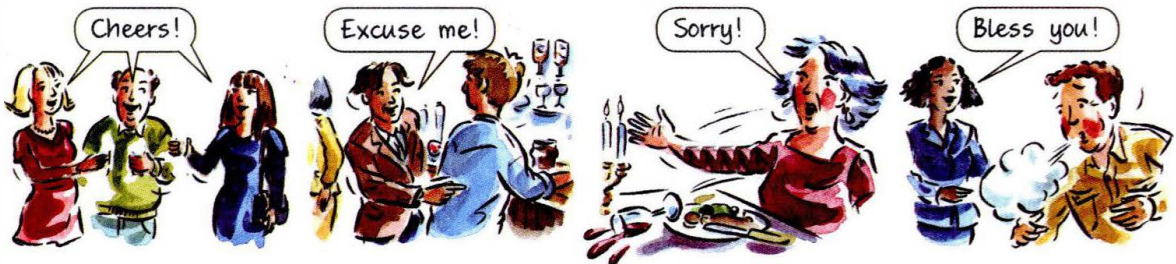
When it's someone's birthday we say **Happy Birthday** [NOT Congratulations].

When we leave someone we usually say Goodbye and also perhaps See you soon! See you soon is quite informal.

When someone goes to bed, we usually say Goodnight. We sometimes also say Sleep well. Don't say Goodnight when you arrive somewhere, only when you leave.

If you ask for something you usually say Please.

If someone does something nice for you, you say Thank you.



## B Special days

When:	you say:
it's someone's birthday	Happy Birthday!
it's Christmas	Happy / Merry Christmas! /'krɪsməs/
it's New Year's Day	Happy New Year!
someone is doing something difficult, e.g. taking an exam or having an interview for a job	Good luck!
someone has done something special, e.g. done well in an exam or had a baby	Congratulations! / Well done!

# Exercises

## 8.1 Choose one of the phrases from the opposite page to fit the dialogues.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 A: (sneezes) Atishoo!<br>B: Bless you!           | 5 A: It's my birthday today.<br>B: ..... |
| 2 A: I'm taking my driving test today.<br>B: ..... | 6 A: How are you?<br>B: .....            |
| 3 A: I passed my driving test!<br>B: .....         | 7 A: Hello!<br>B: .....                  |
| 4 A: Goodbye.<br>B: .....                          | 8 A: Here's your tea.<br>B: .....        |

## 8.2 What is the person saying in the pictures?



## 8.3 What do you say? Choose a phrase from the opposite page.

- 1 You want to go through a doorway. There are some people blocking it. Excuse me!
- 2 A friend buys you a drink.
- 3 A child says 'Goodnight' to you.
- 4 You answer the phone at work. It is 10.30 am.
- 5 You answer the phone at work. It is 3 pm.
- 6 It is 2 am on January 1st. You meet a friend in the street.
- 7 You are on a very crowded bus and you stand on someone's foot.
- 8 It is 24th December. You meet a friend on the bus.

## 8.4 You meet Ann, an English friend. Reply to her.

- ANN: Good evening.  
YOU: Hello.....
- ANN: How are you?  
YOU: .....
- ANN: It's my birthday today.  
YOU: .....
- ANN: Would you like a drink?  
YOU: .....
- ANN: Here you are. Cheers!  
YOU: .....

## 8.5 Write a conversation using as many phrases as possible from the opposite page.

# 9 Conversations 2: Useful words and expressions

## A Words

word	example	meaning
actually	People say bad things about her, but she's actually very nice.	in reality
really	The book is really good.	very
else	Do you want to buy anything else? Or go somewhere else?	in addition or different
around	I'll meet you at around 6 o'clock.	about or approximately
anyway	I'll drive you home. I'm going that way anyway. <sup>1</sup> Anyway, as I said, I woke up very late today. <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> to give a reason for doing something <sup>2</sup> to return to an earlier subject

### Error warning

Actually is a false friend in some languages – in English it means 'in reality' NOT 'now'.

## B Expressions

- A: Why don't we go to the cinema this evening? (used to make a suggestion)  
 B: Good idea. Let's go and see a film and then have a meal. (used to make a suggestion)  
 A: OK! Which film do you want to see?  
 B: I don't mind. [It's all the same to me.] It's up to you. [You can decide.]  
 A: How about / What about the new Angelina Jolie film? (used to make a suggestion)  
 B: Great!

### Error warning

Why don't we go ... [~~NOT Why don't we going~~] or Let's go ... [~~NOT Let's going~~].  
 How about going ... [~~NOT How about go~~] or What about going ... [~~NOT What about go~~].

- A: I was late for work today.  
 B: Oh dear! Was your boss angry? (used when you are surprised or disappointed)  
 A: I forgot to bring your book!  
 B: Oh, it doesn't matter. I don't need it. [it's not important]  
 A: I'm sorry, but I can't come to your party.  
 B: What a pity! (used when you are disappointed)  
 A: I passed my exam.  
 B: Well done!  
 A: Hurry up! The taxi's here. [be quick]  
 A: Look out! / Be careful! – there's a car coming.  
 A: We need to buy Marta's birthday present.  
 B: Absolutely! What about getting her a CD? (used when you agree strongly)  
 A: I agree. Let's go shopping this afternoon.

### Error warning

I agree or I don't agree [~~NOT I am agree or I'm not agree~~].



# Exercises

## 9.1 Choose a word from A opposite to complete the sentences.

- 1 It's boring here. Let's go somewhere else.....
- 2 There were ..... 20 people at the lecture.
- 3 It's a ..... lovely photo!
- 4 Have you had enough to eat? Would you like anything ..... ?
- 5 He said he was a doctor but he's ..... still a medical student.
- 6 The journey takes ..... two hours.

## 9.2 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 I don't like skiing and *about* / anyway / *else* I'm not free that weekend.
- 2 I don't *mind* / *matter* / *agree* what we do. It's all the same to me.
- 3 *It's up to you* / *Let's* / *I agree* invite Rachel to dinner tonight.
- 4 *Be careful* / *What a pity* / *Oh dear* in London. There's lots of traffic there.
- 5 I don't have time to go to the cinema and *really* / *absolutely* / *anyway* I've seen that film already.

## 9.3 Choose an expression from the box to fit these situations.

Well done! Hurry up!	<del>Oh dear!</del> It's up to you.	What a pity! Look out!
-------------------------	--	---------------------------



## 9.4 Correct the eight mistakes in the dialogue.

- VERA: We need to celebrate. I got a new job!  
 LUKE: Well ~~made!~~ done  
 How about go out for a meal this evening?  
 VERA: Great! Let go to that Italian restaurant. Or do you prefer the Chinese one?  
 LUKE: I don't mind it. I like the Italian one but it's very expensive.  
 VERA: Oh, it isn't matter.  
 LUKE: OK. Why don't we going to the Italian restaurant and then we could go to the cinema afterwards? Your new job needs a special celebration.  
 VERA: I'm agree. And I'd love to see that film with George Clooney. Would you?  
 LUKE: Absolute!

# 10 Food and drink

## A Everyday food

Would you like some bread?  
 I love sushi because I love rice.  
 Pasta is good for you, but don't eat too much!  
 I always put salt on my chips, but not pepper.  
 My sister never eats meat or fish. She's vegetarian.  
 Do you take sugar in tea or coffee?

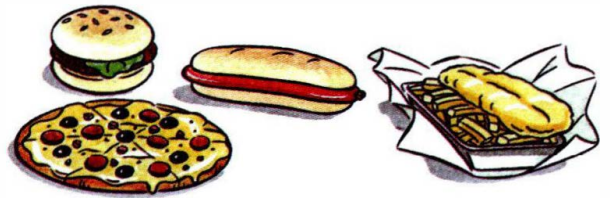


**Error warning**

Can I have some bread? [NOT Can I have a bread?]

## B Fast food

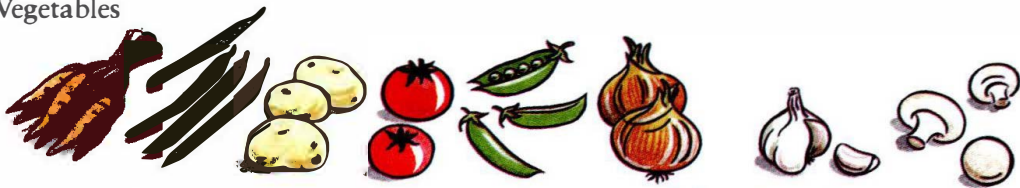
I eat hamburgers, hot dogs and pizzas when I don't have much time.  
 Fish and chips is popular in Britain, Australia and New Zealand.



## C Fruit /fru:t/ and vegetables /'vedʒtəbəlz/

Vegetables are good for you. Fruit is also good for you. (singular, uncountable)

Vegetables



carrots    beans    potatoes    tomatoes    peas    onions /'ʌjənz/    garlic    mushrooms

Fruit



orange  
/'ɒrɪndʒ/

banana

pear  
/peə/

grapes

strawberries  
/'strɔ:brɪz/

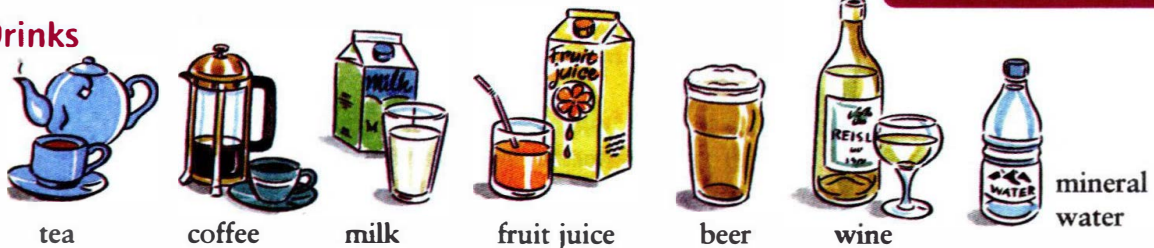
pineapple  
/'paɪnæpl/

**Error warning**

I love fruit [NOT I love fruits].

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

## D Drinks



tea

coffee

milk

fruit juice

beer

wine

mineral  
water

**Tip**

Go to a supermarket. How many different kinds of food or drink have English names on them?  
 Try to learn some of them.

www.irLanguage.com

# Exercises

**10.1** Complete the sentences. Use words from the opposite page.

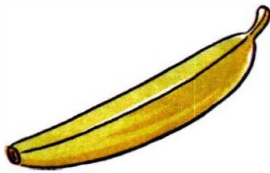
- 1 Rice ..... is popular in Japan.
- 2 ..... and ..... are very popular in Italy.
- 3 Chips are made from .....
- 4 Many British people eat .....
- 5 Hamburgers are made from .....
- 6 A ..... is a sausage inside a piece of bread.

**10.2** Put these words into two lists: fruit and vegetables.

~~beans~~ pineapple grapes onions apple carrot garlic pear mushrooms

fruit	vegetables
	beans

**10.3** Write the names of these fruit and vegetables.



1 banana .....



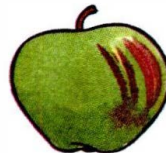
3 .....



5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

**10.4** Here are the names of some drinks with the letters mixed up. What are they?

- |                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 eta <u>tea</u> ..... | 4 fecofe .....        |
| 2 rebe .....           | 5 rituf eciju .....   |
| 3 klim .....           | 6 nilemar retaw ..... |

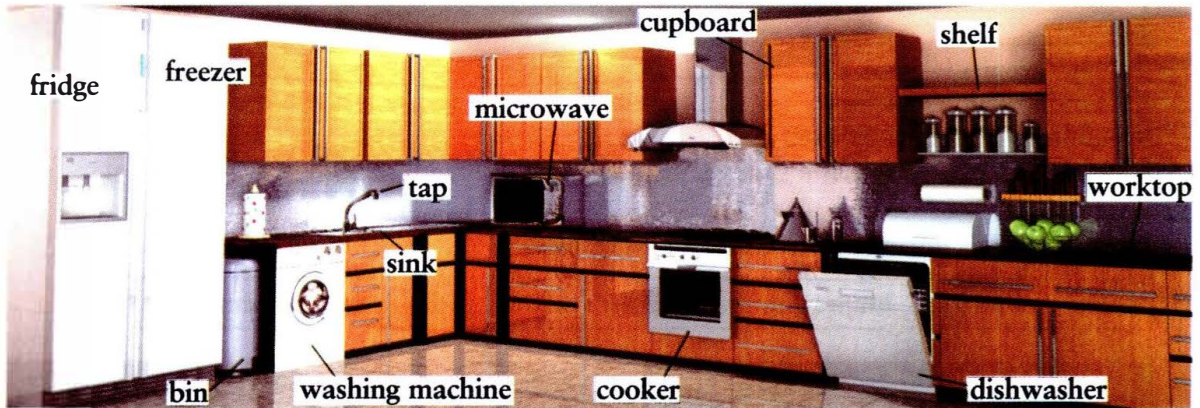
**10.5** Choose a, b or c.

- 1 Vegetarians do not eat a) vegetables b) meat c) fast food.
- 2 Garlic is a kind of a) fruit b) fast food c) vegetable.
- 3 You put a) salt b) beer c) sugar in coffee.
- 4 Which is correct a) pinapple b) pineapple c) pieapple?
- 5 The first sound in onion is the same as the sound in a) fun b) orange c) man.
- 6 A pear is a) a drink b) a vegetable c) a fruit.

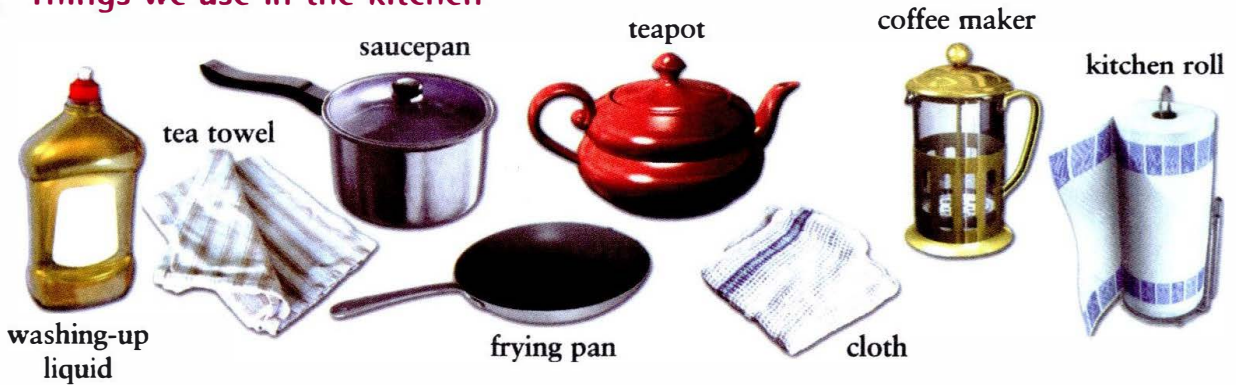
**10.6** What are your four favourite foods? And your three favourite drinks? Are they good for you? Use a dictionary to help you.

# 11 In the kitchen

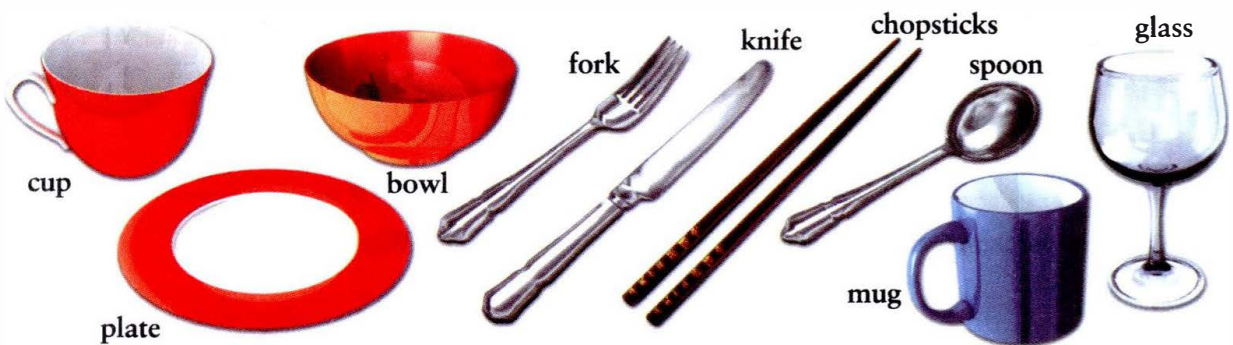
## A What's in the kitchen?



## B Things we use in the kitchen



## C Things we use for eating and drinking



## D Expressions

A: Where can I find a mug / a cloth / some kitchen paper? B: They are in the cupboard.

A: Can I help with the washing-up / cooking? B: Yes, please! You can dry the plates. / You can cook some rice.

A: Where does this cup / plate / frying pan go? B: Put it in this cupboard, please.

### Tip

Stick labels on objects in your kitchen with their English names on them. You will see these every day and this will help you to learn the words.



# Exercises

**11.1** Tick (✓) yes or no. Write sentences for the wrong answers.

- |  | yes | no |
|--|-----|----|
| 1 I use a frying pan to drink out of.        |     | ✓  |
| 2 You use washing-up liquid to clean plates. |     |    |
| 3 The fridge is cold inside.                 |     |    |
| 4 The fridge is colder than the freezer.     |     |    |
| 5 I turn on the tap to get water.            |     |    |
| 6 A tea towel is for making tea.             |     |    |

**11.2** Make questions for these answers. Use words from the opposite page.

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 <u>Where's the coffee?</u> ..... | It's in the cupboard.                                |
| 2 .....                            | It's on the cooker.                                  |
| 3 .....                            | Please put them on the worktop.                      |
| 4 .....                            | Thanks. You can wash these plates and I'll dry them. |
| 5 .....                            | In the fridge on the bottom shelf.                   |

**11.3** What do you need?

- 1 To make coffee I need a coffee maker, a cup, a spoon.....
- 2 To make tea I need .....
- 3 To fry something I need .....
- 4 To eat my food I need .....
- 5 To drink some water I need .....
- 6 To cook dinner in two minutes I need .....
- 7 To wash plates, knives and forks I need .....
- 8 To wash my clothes I need .....

**11.4** Look at the picture. Answer the questions.

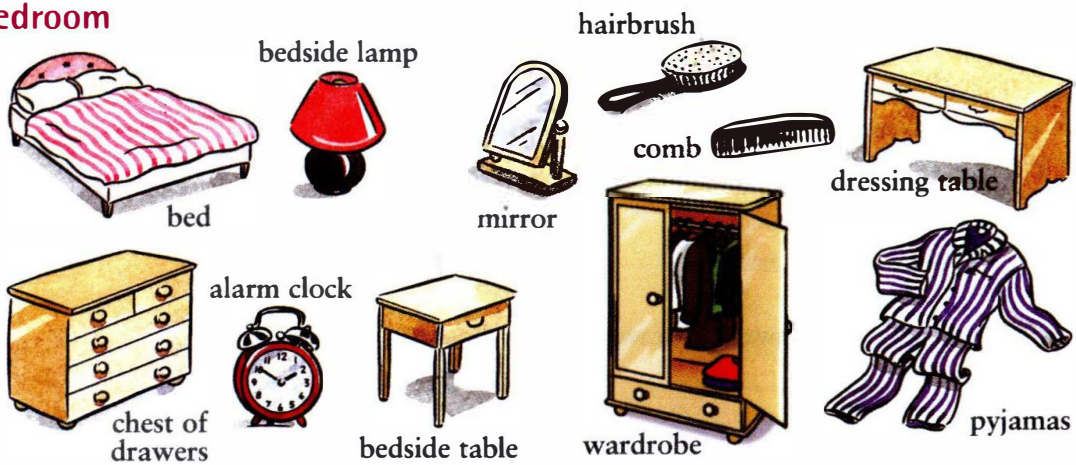


- 1 What's on the cooker? a saucepan.....
- 2 What's on the shelf? .....
- 3 What's in the cupboard under the shelf? .....
- 4 Where's the microwave? .....
- 5 What's next to the sink? .....
- 6 What's under the sink? .....

(See Unit 52: Places.)

# 12 In the bedroom and bathroom

## A Bedroom



## B Bathroom



## C Joanna's routine

Joanna goes to bed at 11 o'clock. She goes upstairs to her bedroom.

She gets undressed and gets into bed.



She reads for a bit.



She turns off the light and falls asleep.



She wakes up when her alarm clock rings.



She gets up.

She has a shower,



cleans her teeth



and gets dressed.



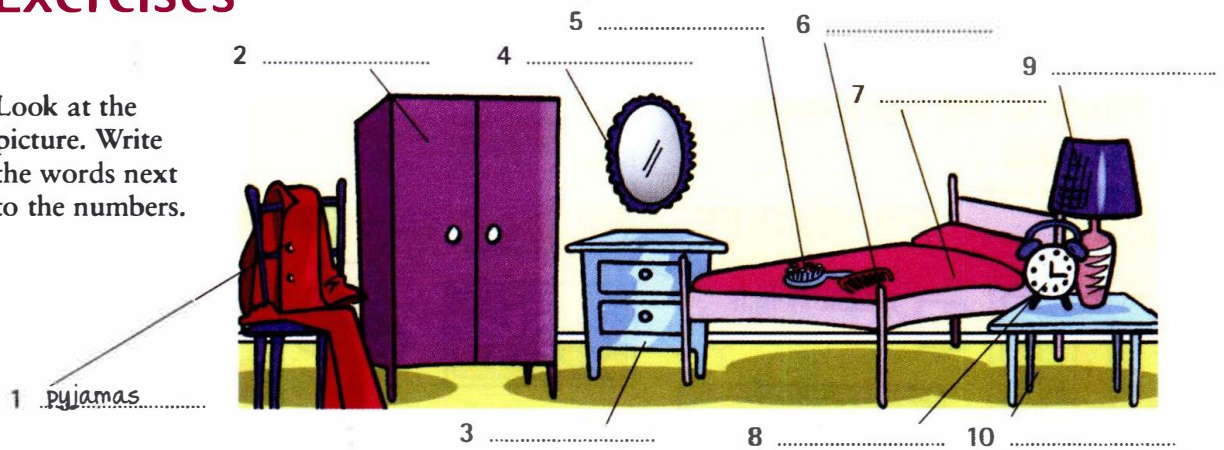
She goes downstairs to the kitchen for breakfast.



(See Unit 45: Everyday things.)

# Exercises

**12.1** Look at the picture. Write the words next to the numbers.



**12.2** Write down five more things that you need to take with you if you go to stay with a friend for one night.

toothbrush .....  
 .....  
 .....

**12.3** Look at the pictures. Describe what the people are doing.



1 Anne is cleaning her teeth.



3 Mrs Park .....



5 Jaime .....



2 Selim and Umit .....



4 Mr Park .....



6 Lee .....

**12.4** What is in your bathroom? Write the things down. Use a dictionary to help you.

**12.5** Are these sentences true about your bedroom? If not, change them to make them true.

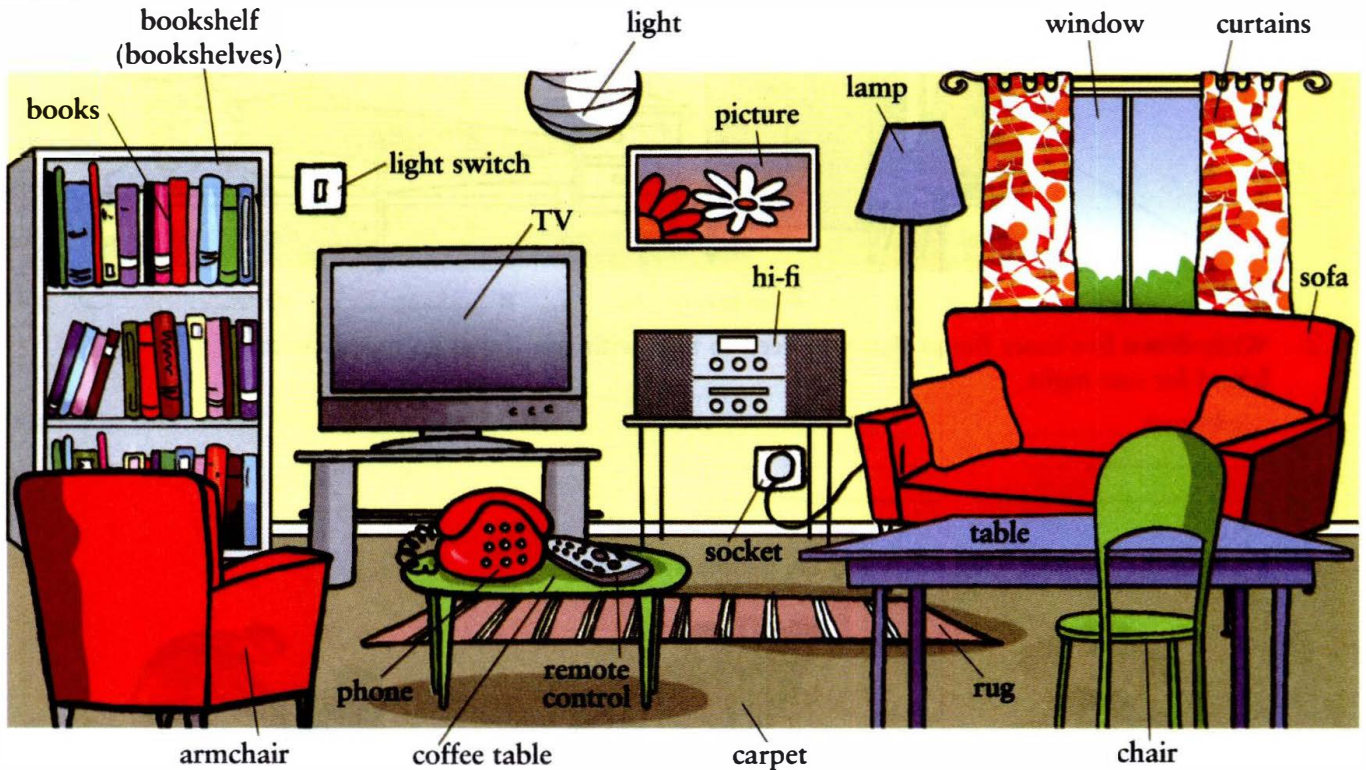
- 1 ~~My bedroom is upstairs.~~ My bedroom is not upstairs. I live in a flat.
- 2 My bedroom has one large window.
- 3 In my bedroom there is a big bed.
- 4 There are two wardrobes, one on the left and one on the right of the room.
- 5 I have a small bedside table.
- 6 I've got a lamp and an alarm clock on my bedside table.
- 7 There is a chest of drawers under the window.
- 8 I haven't got a dressing table.

**12.6** Complete this paragraph about your night-time and morning routine.

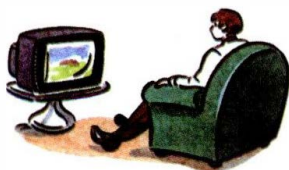
I usually <sup>1</sup>go..... to bed at <sup>2</sup>..... . I get <sup>3</sup>..... and <sup>4</sup>..... into bed. I usually read <sup>5</sup>..... a bit. I turn <sup>6</sup>..... the light and <sup>7</sup>..... asleep. I <sup>8</sup>..... up when my alarm clock rings. I get <sup>9</sup>..... . I have a <sup>10</sup>..... , <sup>11</sup>..... my teeth and <sup>12</sup>..... dressed. I go to the kitchen for breakfast.

# 13 In the living room

## A Things in the living room



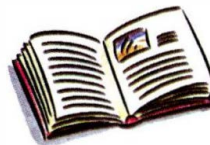
## B Useful verbs



Every evening I watch television.



Sometimes I listen to the radio or listen to music.



Sometimes I read a book.

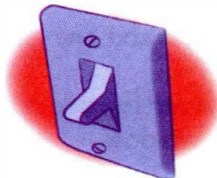


Sometimes I just relax. [rest and do nothing]

## C Expressions



It's getting dark. Can you close the curtains, please?



OK. And I'll switch the light on.



Thanks. Now can you turn the radio off? And pass me the remote control. I want to turn on the TV. There's a good programme on.

### Error warning

The furniture in my room is white [NOT The furniture in my room are white].



# Exercises

## 13.1 Write the names of ...

- 1 somewhere you can put books. a bookshelf
- 2 somewhere two or three people can sit.
- 3 somewhere you can put down your cup.
- 4 something you can look at on the wall.
- 5 something for switching the light on or off.
- 6 something for listening to music.
- 7 something under your feet.
- 8 something for changing channels on the TV.

## 13.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1 switch on the | TV             |
| 2 relax in an   | lamp           |
| 3 close the     | remote control |
| 4 pass the      | radio          |
| 5 listen to the | armchair       |
| 6 watch         | curtains       |

## 13.3 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 This evening let's just relax us at home.
- 2 I don't often listen the radio.
- 3 We need some more bookshelves in this room.
- 4 I watched at television all evening yesterday.
- 5 It's dark now. Please make the curtains.
- 6 Jim has some very nice furnitures in his house.

This evening let's just relax at home.

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 13.4 Find 11 more words from this unit in the wordsearch.



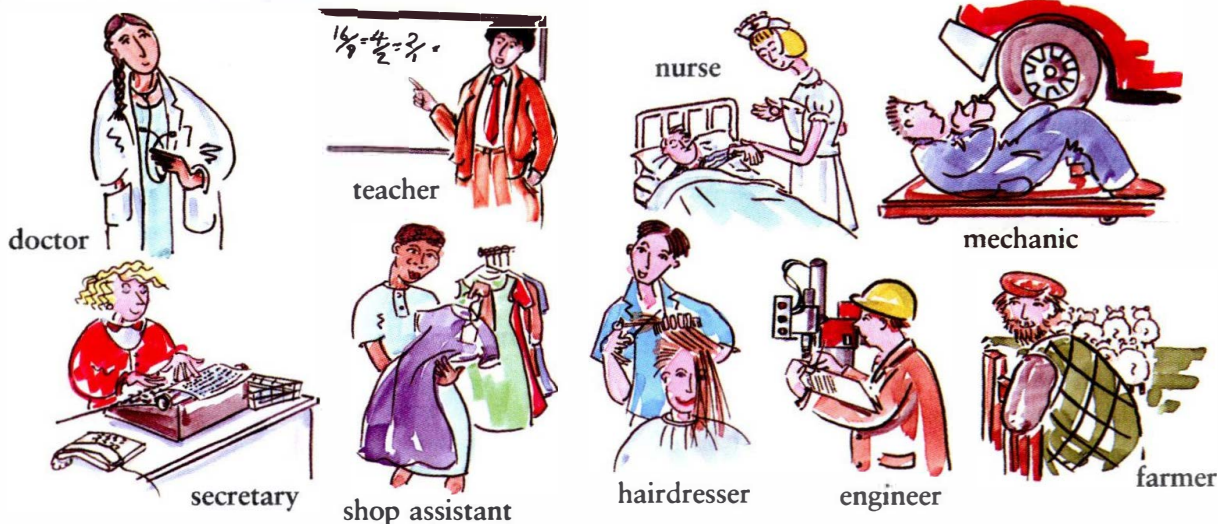
F	T	A	L	W	X	A	R	O	C	F	Y	D
E	R	L	S	O	C	K	E	T	U	I	I	U
D	K	A	G	L	N	T	B	C	R	I	E	F
R	E	M	O	T	E	C	O	N	T	R	O	L
A	Y	P	F	C	H	A	I	R	A	P	J	I
D	E	C	H	K	I	R	G	T	I	R	U	G
I	<b>B</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>K</b>	F	P	S	I	N	E	B	H
O	G	F	E	A	I	E	L	H	S	C	R	T
S	U	A	T	L	E	T	V	C	A	E	U	O

### Follow-up

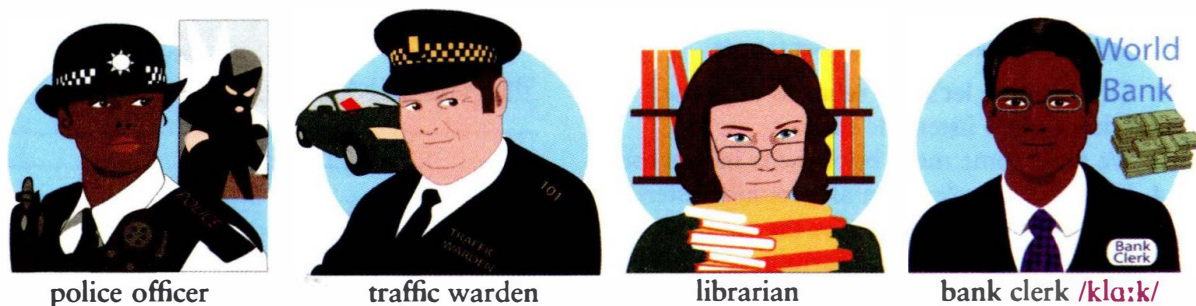
Write about your living room at home. You can draw a plan of it first. What furniture is there in the room? What colour are the walls? Are there any pictures on them? What do you do when you are in your living room?

# 14 Jobs

## A What's his/her job?



## B Jobs in the town



## C Expressions

SAM: What's your job?  
 BEN: I'm a waiter. I work in a restaurant. What do you do?  
 SAM: I'm a taxi driver.  
 BEN: Is it an interesting job?  
 SAM: Yes, I like it. Where do you work?  
 SOPHIE: I work in an office. Sometimes it's boring.



My dad works in a factory which makes car parts.  
 I worked in a shop at the weekends when I was a student.  
 I want to work in a beauty salon as a hairdresser.  
 I'd like to work in a children's hospital.  
 I'm a writer. I work at / from home.

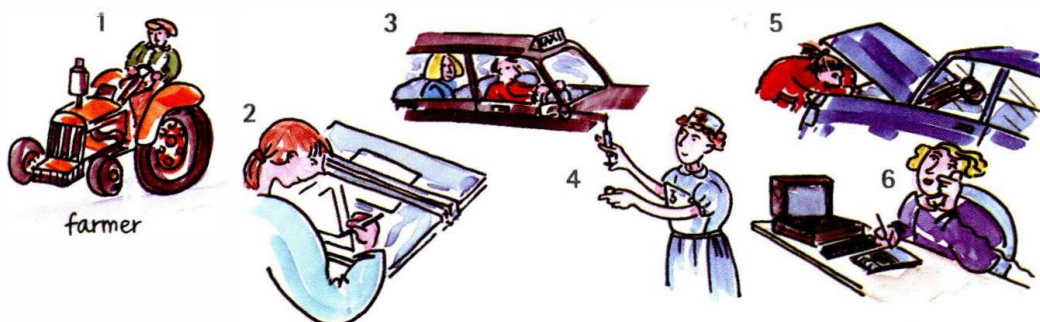
# Exercises

## 14.1 Where do they work?

- 1 A teacher works in a school / college / university.....
- 2 A doctor .....
- 3 A waiter .....
- 4 A secretary .....
- 5 A shop assistant .....
- 6 A hairdresser .....

## 14.2 Match the pictures with the jobs in the box.

nurse    ~~farmer~~    secretary    taxi driver    engineer    mechanic



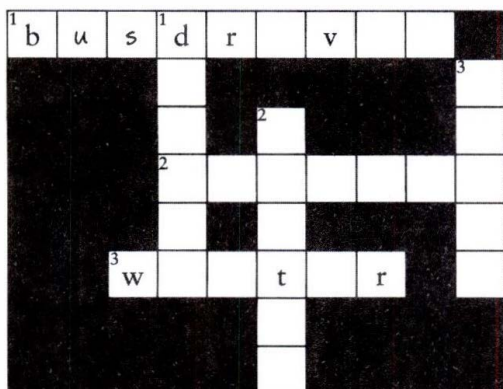
## 14.3 Complete the crossword.

Across

- 1 works on a bus
- 2 works in a school
- 3 writes books

Down

- 1 works in a hospital
- 2 works in a restaurant
- 3 works with the doctor



## 14.4 Complete the sentences.

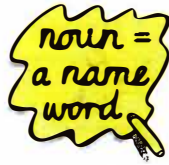
- 1 He works in a factory..... which makes electrical goods.
- 2 She's an ..... . She builds roads and bridges.
- 3 The traffic ..... is checking all the parked cars.
- 4 The ..... told me to return the book at the end of the month.
- 5 The bank ..... changed some money for me.
- 6 A police ..... told me the way to the station.

## 14.5 Answer the questions for yourself.

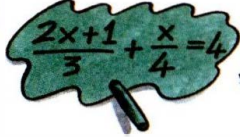
- 1 What do you do?
- 2 Where do you work?
- 3 Is it an interesting job?

# 15 At school and university

## A Subjects



English



maths



art



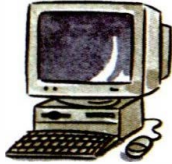
history



geography



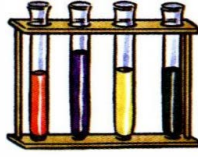
biology



ICT (information communication technology)



PE (physical education)



chemistry



modern languages

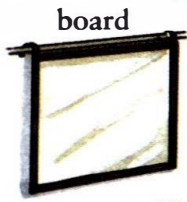


physics



music

## B Useful things



board



noticeboard



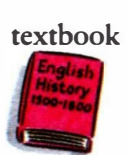
cassette



piece of paper



pencil



textbook



board pen



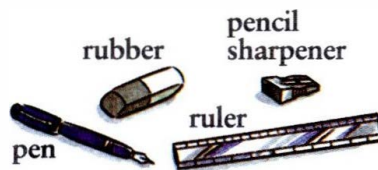
board rubber



drawing pin



tape recorder

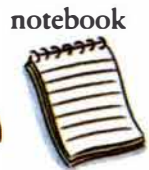


rubber

pencil sharpener



ruler



notebook



desk



OHP (overhead projector)



computer



DVD player

## C Expressions

A maths teacher teaches maths. Her students study maths.

Children go to school and students go to university.

At school children learn to read and write.

Students can do an (English) course in many schools and universities. At the end of a course, you often take / do an exam. You hope to pass your exams. You don't want to fail your exams.

If you pass your final exams at university, you get a degree.

### Error warning

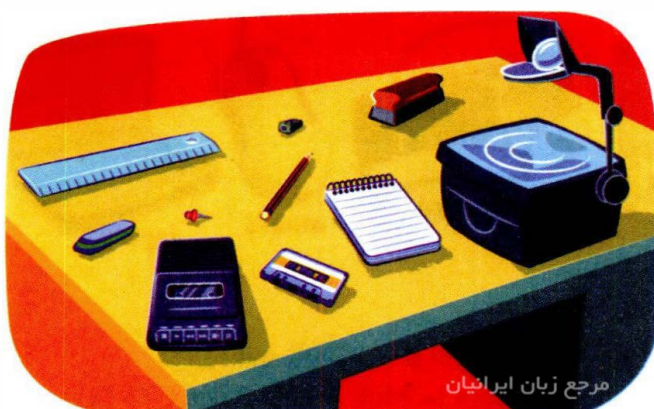
After school, students do homework [NOT make homework or do homeworks]. (See Units 38 and 39 for more expressions with *do* and *make*.)

# Exercises

**15.1** Match the subject on the left with what you study on the right.

- |             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| 1 maths     | a animals and plants         |
| 2 physics   | b sport                      |
| 3 history   | c $25y + 32x = 51z$          |
| 4 geography | d $e = mc^2$                 |
| 5 PE        | e $H_2O$                     |
| 6 English   | f the countries of the world |
| 7 chemistry | g the 15th century           |
| 8 biology   | h computers                  |
| 9 ICT       | i spelling                   |

**15.2** Look at the picture for 30 seconds. Then cover it. How many of the ten objects can you remember? Write them down in English.



**15.3** Which of the things in B on the opposite page are in the room where you study English? Write them here.

In the room where I study English I can see .....

.....

.....

**15.4** Choose a verb from C opposite to fill the gaps below. Put the verb in the correct form.

John does well at school. He finds it easy to <sup>1</sup> *learn* ..... and he always <sup>2</sup> ..... his homework. He usually <sup>3</sup> ..... all his exams. He will <sup>4</sup> ..... his final school exams soon. If he <sup>5</sup> ..... , he will <sup>6</sup> ..... to university next year. If he <sup>7</sup> ..... , he will be very sad. John really wants to <sup>8</sup> ..... geography at university. He would also like to <sup>9</sup> ..... a special geology course. His sister is already at university. Next year she will <sup>10</sup> ..... her degree and then she will try to find a job.

**15.5** Which are/were your three favourite subjects? Which subjects (if any) do / did you not like?

.....

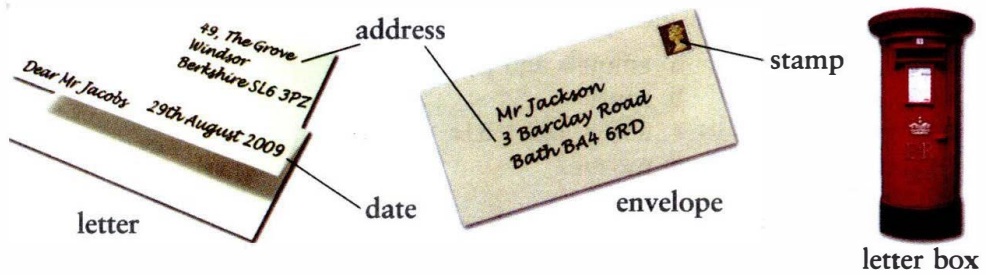
.....

**Tip**

Draw two columns on a piece of paper. In one column write five words from the opposite page which you want to learn. In the second column put a drawing (or a translation or a definition). Cover the first column and look at the second column. Can you remember the English words?

# 16 Communications

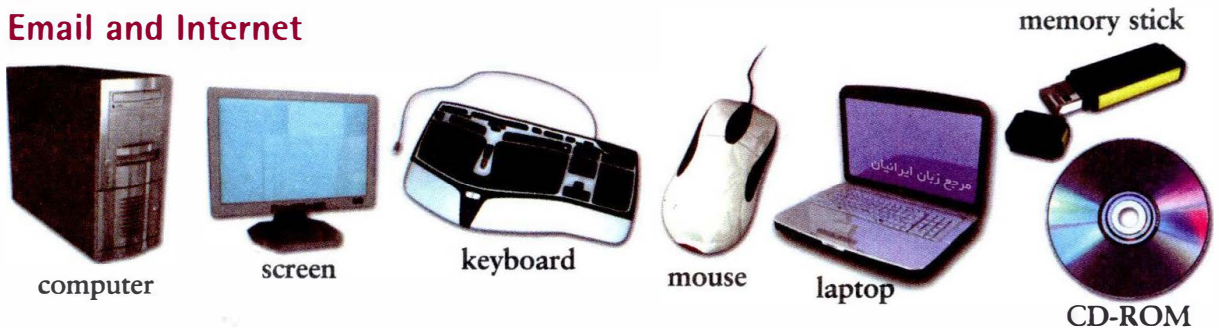
## A Letters



Don't forget to put a stamp on the envelope.

Don't forget to post the letters.

## B Email and Internet



Anne gets a lot of emails from New York.

You have to be careful what information you give people online.

What's your email address? Moll@cup.com (= Moll at C-U-P dot C-O-M)

## C Telephones and mobile devices



Juan makes a lot of phone calls. He phones his girlfriend every day.



I always take my PDA with me. I never turn it off.

What's your phone number? What's your mobile number?

066530718 (= oh six six five three oh seven one eight / oh double six five ...)

He's not answering his phone. I'll leave a voicemail and I'll text him / send him a text (message).

## D Expressions

SUE: Hello.

NICK: Hello. It's Nick here. Can I speak to Ahmed, please?

SUE: I'm sorry, he's not here at the moment.

Can I take a message?

NICK: Thanks. Could you just tell him I called. I'll call back later.

SUE: OK. I'll tell him. Goodbye.

NICK: Bye.

### Tip

Use a search engine to find an example of a letter and an email in English. Write down any useful words or phrases in them.

# Exercises

**16.1** Have you got any of the things on the opposite page? Make a list.  
mobile

**16.2** What are the names of these things?



- |                 |         |         |          |
|-----------------|---------|---------|----------|
| 1 keyboard..... | 4 ..... | 7 ..... | 10 ..... |
| 2 .....         | 5 ..... | 8 ..... | 11 ..... |
| 3 .....         | 6 ..... | 9 ..... | 12 ..... |

**16.3** Complete this phone conversation.

SALLY: Hello.  
 MEENA: Hello. <sup>1</sup>It's..... Meena here. Can I <sup>2</sup>..... to Amal, please?  
 SALLY: I'm <sup>3</sup>....., he's at work <sup>4</sup>..... the moment. Can I <sup>5</sup>.....  
 a message?  
 MEENA: It's all right. I'll <sup>6</sup>..... back later.  
 SALLY: OK, then. Bye.  
 MEENA: Bye.

**16.4** Write down:

- 1 two telephone numbers that are important to you.  
 .....
- 2 two email addresses that are important to you.  
 .....

Now read them aloud.

**16.5** Answer these questions.

- 1 Do you prefer to text or phone your friends?
- 2 Do you send more emails or more text messages?
- 3 How often do you go online?
- 4 Do you prefer to use a laptop or a mobile device?
- 5 Do you often write letters?

# 17 Holidays

## A Holiday (noun)

We had a lovely holiday in Egypt in 2008.

I'm not working next week. I'm on holiday.

Are you going on holiday this summer?

## B Types of holidays

We're going on a package holiday to Hong Kong. (flights and hotel are included)

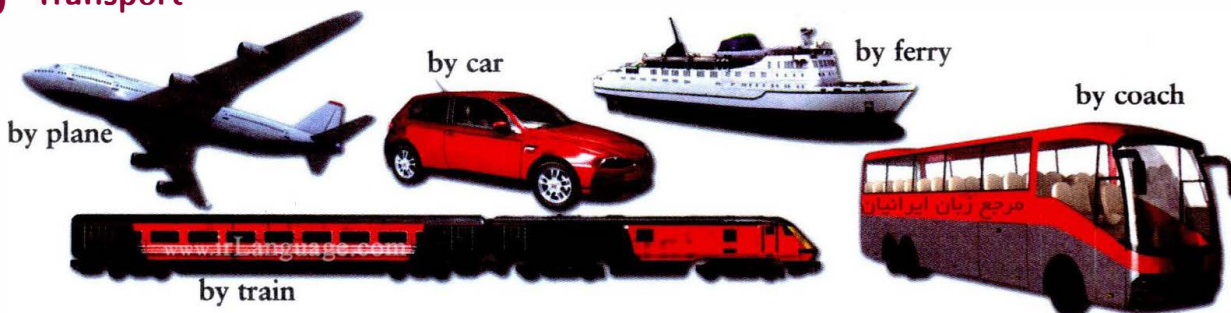
We're going to have a winter holiday this year.

I want to go camping this year. (sleep in a tent)

I'm going on a walking holiday in the Alps.

A coach tour is an easy way to go on holiday. (travelling in a comfortable bus)

## C Transport



## D Don't forget to take ...

your passport (if you are going to another country)

a visa (a stamp that you need in your passport to go to some countries)

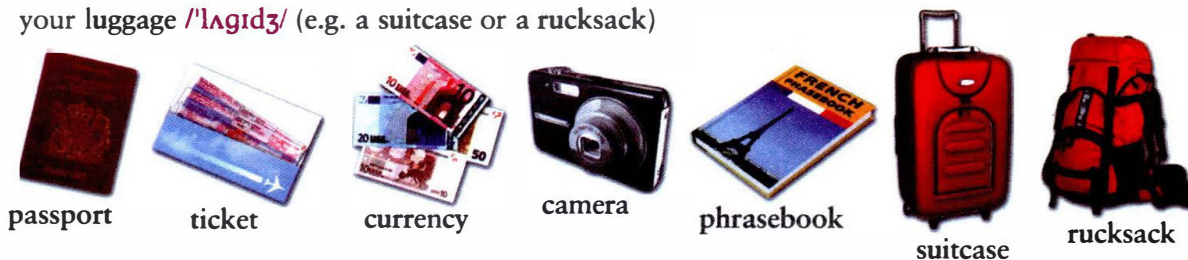
your tickets

some traveller's cheques and currency (money of the country you are going to)

a camera

a phrasebook

your luggage /'lʌɡɪdʒ/ (e.g. a suitcase or a rucksack)



## E Expressions

A: Are you flying to France from England?

B: No, we're going by ferry.

A: What are you going to do in Madrid?

B: We want to try the local food and enjoy the nightlife (clubs, etc.).

A: Have a great time! And send me a postcard!

(See Unit 30: Travelling and Unit 47: Moving for more words about travel.)



# Exercises

## 17.1 Complete the sentences.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1 A: Are you working on Monday?           | B: No, I'm <u>on</u> ..... holiday.   |
| 2 A: Are you ..... on holiday this year?  | B: Yes, I'm going camping.            |
| 3 A: Did you have a good ..... in Greece? | B: Yes, it was wonderful.             |
| 4 A: Are you flying to Italy?             | B: No, I'm going ..... train.         |
| 5 A: I'm going to New York next week.     | B: Great! Please ..... me a postcard. |







## 17.2 What type of holiday is each person talking about?

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1 It was fun but the tent was very small.                      | <u>camping</u> ..... |
| 2 Everything was included – hotels and flights.                | .....                |
| 3 We were on the coach for seven days. I was very tired.       | .....                |
| 4 We walked about 20 kilometres every day.                     | .....                |
| 5 We went to Switzerland in December. There was a lot of snow. | .....                |

## 17.3 Look at the different ways of travelling. Put one tick (✓) for sometimes true, two ticks for often true and three ticks for always true.

	you can take a lot of luggage	very fast	cheap	you see a lot as you travel	relaxing
ferry					
car	✓✓✓				
plane					

## 17.4 Write the names of these things you need for a holiday.

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
|  |  |  |
| 1 <u>currency</u> .....   | 3 .....   | 5 .....  |
|  |  |  |
| 2 .....   | 4 .....   | 6 .....  |


## 17.5 What do we call:

- something you take photos with? a camera.....
- a special stamp in your passport to enter a country? a v.....
- something you fly in? a p.....
- something that you carry things on your back in? a r.....
- cheques you can use in different countries? t..... C.....
- what people carry their clothes in when they go on holiday? a s.....

## 17.6 Fill the gaps in this postcard.

I'm having a great <sup>1</sup>time..... here in Spain. The <sup>2</sup>..... is great – the clubs are open all night. The <sup>3</sup>..... food is very good – lots of fish and salads. Please send me a <sup>4</sup>..... from your holiday in Italy.

Love,  
Alex



---



---



---



---

# 18 Shops and shopping

## A Kinds of shops



\* These words are also for people's jobs. We often add 's and say: I'm going to the newsagent's to get a paper. Do you want anything from the butcher's?

## B In the department store

A department store is a large shop which sells a lot of different things – clothes, beauty products, toys, etc.

BASEMENT	Electricals Food
GROUND FLOOR	Beauty
FIRST FLOOR	Women's Wear
SECOND FLOOR	Men's Clothes Children's Department
THIRD FLOOR	Furniture
FOURTH FLOOR	Toys Restaurant

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

## C Signs in shops




## D Expressions


- SHOP ASSISTANT: Can I help you?  
 CUSTOMER: Can I try this shirt on? (*goes and tries it on*) Have you got a bigger / smaller size / a different colour?  
 SHOP ASSISTANT: No, I'm sorry. That's the only one.  
 CUSTOMER: OK. I'll take it. How much does it cost?  
 SHOP ASSISTANT: £17.  
 CUSTOMER: Can I pay by cheque?  
 SHOP ASSISTANT: No, credit card or cash only.  
 CUSTOMER: Sorry, I only have a £50 note. I don't have any change. [coins or smaller notes]  
 SHOP ASSISTANT: That's OK. Here's your receipt. Would you like a (carrier) bag?

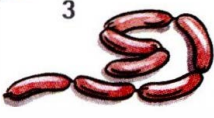
# Exercises


**18.1** Match the item with the shop.


toy shop   butcher   ~~chemist~~   baker   gift shop   newsagent

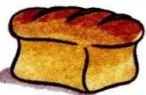
1  aspirin

2  beach ball

3  sausages

4  postcards

5  souvenir T-shirt

6  bread

**18.2** Where do you need to go?

- 1 I want to get a newspaper.    the newsagent
- 2 I'd like to buy food for a week.
- 3 I need some stamps.
- 4 We must get Jim a present.
- 5 I'd like to buy a book.
- 6 I want to buy some clothes for myself and my children in one shop.

**18.3** Look at the department store plan in B opposite. Which floor will you go to buy:

- |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| 1 an armchair? <u>third floor</u> ..... | 6 some baby clothes? ..... |
| 2 lipstick? .....                       | 7 a tie? .....             |
| 3 a cup of tea? .....                   | 8 a TV? .....              |
| 4 a packet of tea? .....                | 9 a bed? .....             |
| 5 a skirt? .....                        | 10 a doll? .....           |

**18.4** Write the words for these definitions.

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 a person who sells things in a shop    shop assistant | 4 'plastic money'      |
| 2 money (not a cheque or credit card)                   | 5 coins or small notes |
| 3 a piece of paper that is worth £20                    |                        |

Now write definitions in English for these words/phrases.

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 6 a butcher's     | 8 a newsagent's |
| 7 the first floor | 9 the basement  |

**18.5** Which sign tells you ...

- 1 that you can give the money for the things you are buying here?    Cash desk
- 2 that you can't go into the shop?
- 3 that the door will open towards you?
- 4 that the door will open away from you?
- 5 that you can go into the shop?

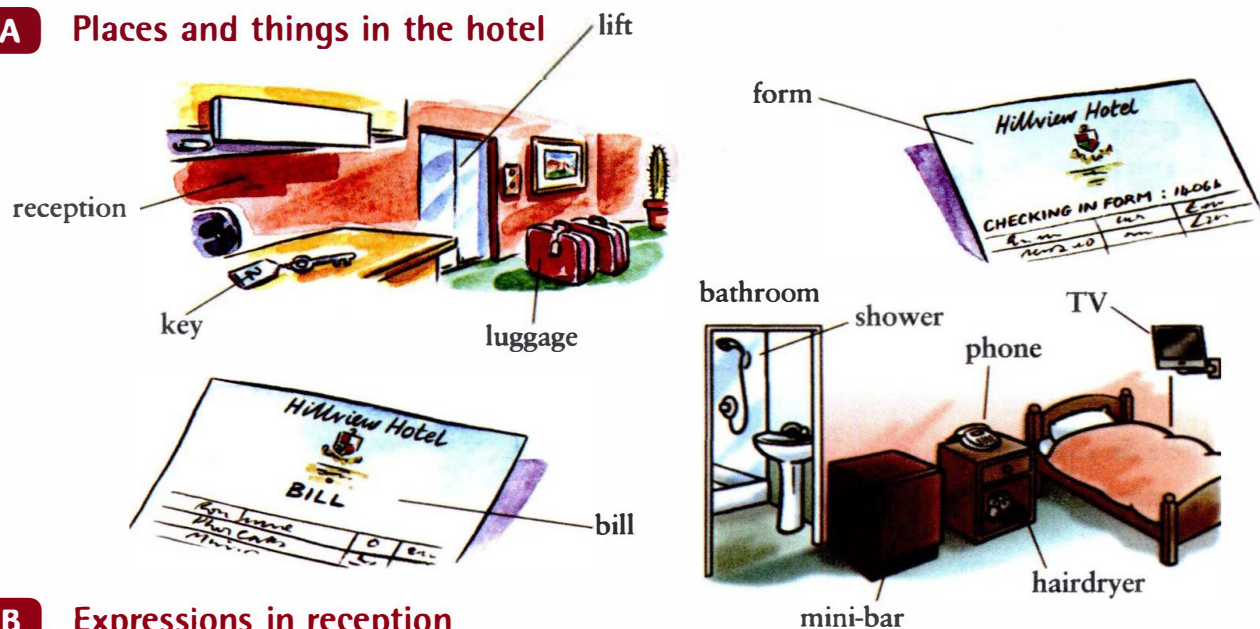


**18.6** Fill the gaps in the dialogue.

- CUSTOMER:        How much does this jacket <sup>1</sup>..... ?
- SHOP ASSISTANT:    £50.
- CUSTOMER:        I'll take it, please. Can I <sup>2</sup>..... by credit card?
- SHOP ASSISTANT:    Certainly. I'll put your receipt in the <sup>3</sup>..... .

# 19 In a hotel

## A Places and things in the hotel



## B Expressions in reception

Do you have a single room [for one person] / a double room [for two people]?

I have a reservation. [I booked a room] My name is ...

We'd like a room with a view of the sea.

The receptionist may say:

Here is your key.

Your room is on the first floor. Take the lift. It's over there.

Would you like some help with your luggage?

Can you fill in this form, please?

Sign (your name) here, please. [write your name]

Please check your bill. [make sure it is correct]

When you leave you say:

Can I check out, please?

Can I have the bill, please?

## C Asking questions about hotel services

How much is a single room with a bathroom?

Can I order room service?

How do I get an outside line? (You want to phone someone who is not in the hotel.)

What is the code for Poland?

Can I have breakfast in my room, please?


Can I have a wake-up call at 6.30, please? (You want to wake up at 6.30.)


What time is breakfast / lunch / dinner?

Can I (ex)change some money, please?

# Exercises


**19.1** Look at the pictures and complete the dialogue with words from the opposite page.



CUSTOMER: Can I have a  <sup>1</sup> *double* ..... room for tonight, please?


RECEPTIONIST: Would you like a room with a  <sup>2</sup> ..... ?

CUSTOMER: Yes, please. And with a  <sup>3</sup> ....., please.

RECEPTIONIST: All our rooms have a TV, a  <sup>4</sup> ..... and a

 <sup>5</sup> ..... . I can give you room 25. It has a view of the

 <sup>6</sup> ..... . Here is your  <sup>7</sup> ..... . The

 <sup>8</sup> ..... is over there. The room's on the second floor.

**19.2** Match what you want on the left with what you need on the right.

You want:

- 1 to have a drink in your room
- 2 to go to the top floor
- 3 to open your door
- 4 to get up at 6 am
- 5 to phone your country
- 6 to watch the news
- 7 to wash your hair
- 8 to dry your hair

You need:

- a the lift
- b an outside line
- c a shower
- d a mini-bar
- e a hairdryer
- f a wake-up call
- g a TV
- h a key

**19.3** Choose the right words to complete these sentences.

- 1 At reception / *reservation* you can order *room* / *lift* service.
- 2 We'd like a *two* / *double* room with a *view* / *see* of the garden, please.
- 3 The lift is *after* / *over* there. Take it to the second *floor* / *room*.
- 4 Please *fill* / *write* in this *form* / *bill*.
- 5 I'd like a *sit-up* / *wake-up* call at 7.30 and I'd like to *make* / *have* breakfast in my room, please.
- 6 I have a *luggage* / *reservation* for a *single* / *one* room with a bathroom.
- 7 Can I *cash* / *have* the bill, please? I'll *check* / *change* it now.
- 8 I'm leaving today. Can I *exchange* / *order* some dollars here before I *pay* / *check* out?

**19.4** Write down questions that you can ask in a hotel beginning: Can I ... ? Use these words.

wake-up call    Can I have a wake-up call, please?  
 breakfast in my room    bill    double room    luggage

**19.5** Answer the questions.

- 1 How much does a hotel room cost in the capital of your country?
- 2 What is the code for Britain if you phone from your country?
- 3 What time is breakfast usually in a hotel in your country?
- 4 Is it most important for you to have a hairdryer, a TV or a mini-bar in a hotel room?

# 20 Eating out

## A Places where you can eat

café: you can have a cup of tea / coffee and a snack there (e.g. a sandwich or a cake). They sometimes serve meals (e.g. lunch, dinner) too.

restaurant: you go there for a meal; more expensive than a café.

bar / pub: bars and pubs serve alcohol and soft drinks [non-alcoholic drinks, e.g. fruit juice]; you can usually have a meal or a snack there too.

fast food restaurant: you can get a quick hot meal there, for example burger and chips.

take-away: you buy a snack or a meal there and take it home to eat.

## B In a restaurant



### Menu

#### Starters

Soup of the day (v)

Mixed salad (v)

#### Main courses

Steak with chips or new potatoes

Fish and chips

Vegetable curry (v)

Salmon fillet with green beans

Burger with chips and mushrooms

#### Desserts

Chocolate ice cream

Apple pie

Fruit salad

(v = vegetarian)

## C Expressions

WAITER: Are you ready to order?

CUSTOMER: Yes, I'd like the steak, please.

WAITER: Would you like it with chips or new potatoes?

CUSTOMER: With chips, please.

WAITER: How would you like your steak – rare, medium or well-done?

CUSTOMER: Well-done, please.

WAITER: And what would you like to drink?

CUSTOMER: I'll have a coke, please.

(later)

WAITER: Is everything all right?

CUSTOMER: Thank you, it's delicious. [very good]

(later)

CUSTOMER: Could I have the bill, please?

WAITER: Yes, of course.

# Exercises

**20.1** Look at A opposite. Where would you go to ...

- 1 buy a meal and take it home to eat? a take-away.
- 2 have a romantic dinner for two? .....
- 3 eat a quick lunch? .....
- 4 have a cake and a cup of coffee? .....
- 5 drink a glass of wine with friends? .....

**20.2** Write down the name of a place of this type in your town.

- 1 fast food restaurant: McDonald's.....
- 2 café: .....
- 3 take-away: .....
- 4 restaurant: .....
- 5 bar: .....

**20.3** Choose one of the words in the box which can go with each of the words in each group.

steak    curry    pie    ~~soup~~    salad

- 1 You can have tomato / vegetable / chicken soup..... as a starter.
- 2 I'd like the beef / chicken / vegetable ..... as a main course.
- 3 I'll have the mixed / tomato / fruit .....
- 4 Can I have the apple / chicken ....., please.
- 5 Do you like your ..... well-done, medium or rare?

**20.4** Correct the six mistakes in this dialogue.

- WAITER: Are you ready ~~for~~ order? to
- CUSTOMER: Yes. I like vegetable soup and steak, please.
- WAITER: What would you like your steak? Rare, medium or done good?
- CUSTOMER: Rare, please.
- WAITER: What you would like to drink?
- CUSTOMER: A orange juice, please.

**20.5** Cover the menu opposite. Write the food you can remember. Look at the menu again and check your answers.

**20.6** Answer these questions.

- 1 What would you choose to eat from the menu opposite?
- 2 What can vegetarians eat from the menu?
- 3 Do you like eating out?
- 4 How often do you go to a restaurant?

## Follow-up

Sometimes restaurants in other countries have English menus for tourists. Look at one of these. Write down any useful words you find.

# 21 Sports

## A Ball games

We play all these sports.



football



rugby



American football



basketball



badminton



baseball



tennis



volleyball



table tennis

## B Other popular sports



swimming



running



sailing



motor racing



horse racing



judo / karate



snowboarding



skiing



kayaking

We can use go with all the sports listed in B, apart from judo and karate. I go running every day. I went skiing last year. We use do with judo and karate. She does judo.

(See Unit 37: Go / went / gone.)

## C Where we do sports

We play tennis / badminton / volleyball / basketball on a tennis / badminton / volleyball / basketball court.

We play football / rugby on a football / rugby pitch.

We swim in a swimming pool.

Many towns have a sports centre – you can do lots of different sports there.

## D Expressions

Do you do any sports? Yes, I go swimming / running / sailing / kayaking.

Do you play football / tennis / badminton? I play tennis. Which sports do you play?

What's your favourite sport? I like motor racing best.



# Exercises

**21.1** Cover the opposite page. What are these sports?



1 rugby.....



3 .....



5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

**21.2** Which sports use these things?



1 kayaking.....



3 .....



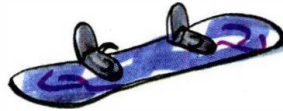
5 .....



7 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....



8 .....

**21.3** Ask questions for these answers.

- 1 Where do people play tennis?  
On a tennis court.
- 2 Do you .....  
Yes, but only American football.
- 3 .....  
No, I don't do any at all. I prefer watching TV.
- 4 Do you .....  
Yes, I go to the swimming pool every Friday.
- 5 What .....  
I like running best.
- 6 Where .....  
On a rugby pitch.

**21.4** Look at the different sports in this unit.

- 1 Write the names of the sports you have done. ....
- 2 Where did you do them? .....
- 3 Which ones do you like? .....
- 4 Which do you not like? .....
- 5 Which ones would you like to do? .....

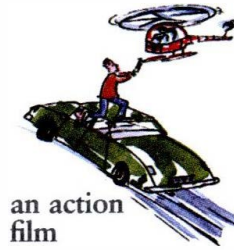
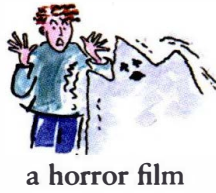
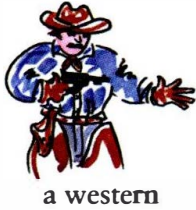
## Follow-up

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Make a page in your vocabulary book for 'sports'. Look at the sports pages of an English-language newspaper. Write down the names of sports you do not know. Look them up in a dictionary.

# 22 Cinema

## A Types of films



## B People in films

Zelda Glitzberg is a film star.

She lives in Hollywood.

She is in the new James Bond film.

Daniel Radcliffe played Harry Potter in the Harry Potter films.

I like films by Italian directors.



## C Expressions

### Error warning

Do you go to the cinema often?  
[NOT Do you go to cinema often?]

Yes, I go every week.

No, I watch DVDs at home.

### Error warning

What's on at the cinema this week? [NOT What's on the cinema this week?]

There's a comedy with Cameron Diaz.

A: Have you seen the latest James Bond film?

B: Yes, I saw it on TV.

A: Did you like the new *Batman* film?

B: Yes, I loved it / enjoyed it. /

No, it was boring.

A: Do you like westerns? B: No, I like science fiction films best.

The best action film I've seen was *Quantum of Solace* with Daniel Craig.

If I see a horror film, I can't sleep.

# Exercises

## 22.1 What types of films are these?

- 1 Some cowboys rob a train. *western*
- 2 A flying saucer lands from Mars.
- 3 A dead person comes back to life.
- 4 James Bond saves the world.
- 5 Mickey Mouse goes on a picnic.
- 6 A man falls in love with his teacher.
- 7 A dead body is found in the river.
- 8 There are lots of songs and dancing.

## 22.2 Write the name of a film of each type.

- 1 science fiction *War of the Worlds*
- 2 romantic comedy
- 3 thriller
- 4 western
- 5 musical
- 6 cartoon

## 22.3 Word puzzle. Can you make words for other types of films with the letters of ROMANTIC?

T H R I L L E R  
..... O ..... R  
C ..... M ..... Y  
A ..... T ..... N  
S ..... N C ..... F ..... N  
W ..... T ..... N  
M ..... I C ..... L  
C A ..... O O .....

## 22.4 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

- 1 Do you prefer going *to the* ..... cinema or watching TV?
- 2 We ..... a DVD last night.
- 3 Who ..... James Bond in *You Only Live Twice*?
- 4 Was Matt Damon ..... *The Bourne Ultimatum*?
- 5 Lots of big ..... live in Hollywood.
- 6 Steven Spielberg is a famous American film .....

## 22.5 Answer these questions.

- 1 What is your favourite type of film?
- 2 Who is your favourite film star?
- 3 Do you prefer going to the cinema or watching DVDs?
- 4 What was the last film you saw?
- 5 How can you find out what is on at the cinema where you live or study?

### Follow-up

Go to the *Time* magazine website of the 100 best films in the world [http://www.time.com/time/2005/100movies/the\\_complete\\_list.html](http://www.time.com/time/2005/100movies/the_complete_list.html). Choose three English-language films you would like to see.

# 23 Free time at home

## A TV, radio, music, film

I watch TV every evening.

Did you watch / see the film about President Kennedy?

What programmes do you like best on TV and radio?

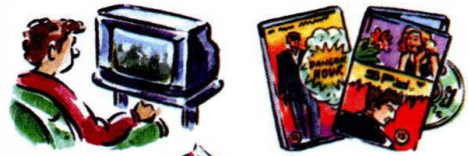
I like watching films on TV. (You can also say: I like to watch ...)

At the weekend, we usually watch a DVD.

I like listening to music on the radio. (You can also say: I like to listen ...)

I often listen to CDs or my MP3 player when I'm relaxing.

I need some new headphones for my MP3 player.



## B Hobbies

A lot of young people play computer games every day.

How often do you use the Internet?

I download music and films from the Internet.

I chat to my friends online every evening.

I really like cooking.

Do you like gardening? /'gɑ:dnrɪŋ/

We grow flowers and vegetables in our garden.



## C Reading

I read a lot at home.

What do you read?

I read novels. [long stories] My sister likes comics.

I like books about nature and different countries.

I like magazines about rock music and sport.

Do you read a newspaper every day?



## D Expressions

We sometimes have friends round.

[we ask them to come to our house / flat]

I often have friends to dinner.

My best friend comes to stay sometimes.

[sleeps in my house / flat]

I talk to my friends on the phone every evening.

Sometimes, I just do nothing.

Grandpa likes to have a sleep after lunch.



### Error warning

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

We watch TV [NOT see-TV] and we listen to the radio [NOT hear-or-listen-the-radio].

# Exercises

## 23.1 What are these people doing?



1 She's watching TV.



3 He's ..... a



5 She's using the .....



2 He's .....



4 She's .....



6 He's ..... to .....

## 23.2 Fill in the missing verbs.

- 1 Sometimes I listen ..... to CDs or an MP3 player.
- 2 I like ..... magazines more than newspapers.
- 3 I ..... to my sister on the phone every Sunday.
- 4 A lot of people like to ..... a sleep after lunch.
- 5 Do you ever ..... friends to dinner?
- 6 The children ..... computer games every evening.
- 7 I want to ..... some music from the Internet this evening.
- 8 Did you ..... the programme about Namibia yesterday?
- 9 My dad ..... vegetables in his garden.
- 10 Shall we ..... a DVD tonight?

## 23.3 Answer these questions.

- 1 When you have friends round, what do you like to do?
- 2 Who comes to stay at your house / flat?
- 3 What do you like to read most?
- 4 How often do you talk to your friends on the phone?
- 5 Do you have an MP3 player? How often do you use it?
- 6 How often do you chat to your friends online?
- 7 Do you ever download music or films from the Internet?
- 8 What is your favourite computer game?
- 9 When do you use headphones?

## 23.4 Interesting or boring? Number these activities from 5 (= very interesting) to 1 (= very boring).

gardening	cooking	reading	using the Internet	watching DVDs
listening to music	doing nothing	chatting online		

# 24 Music and musical instruments

## A Music, musical and musician

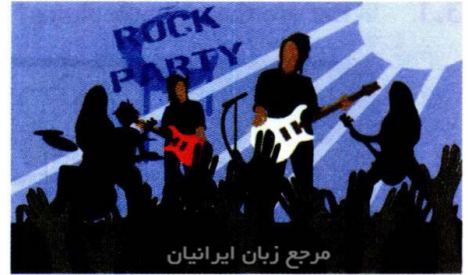
Music is an uncountable noun. We do not use it in the plural.  
The band played fantastic music for more than two hours  
[NOT ~~fantastic musics~~].

Musical is an adjective.

There is a shop on King Street that sells musical instruments  
[NOT ~~music instruments~~].

A musician (noun) is a person.

My brother is a very good musician. He plays three instruments.



## B Musical instruments



piano



guitar



violin



clarinet



cello



flute



trumpet



drums

## C Playing musical instruments

Connie plays the clarinet. Her brother plays the drums.

Krishnan is learning the guitar. His friend, Alba, has piano lessons.

Wilma is a very good flute-player. She plays in an orchestra. Her friend, Nuria, is a good trumpet-player.

Ricardo is an excellent violinist. His sister is a good pianist.

Can you play a musical instrument?

## D Listening to music

Kim loves classical music. (for example, Beethoven, Mozart) [NOT ~~classic music~~]

Marsha can't stand opera. [dislikes it very much] She prefers pop music.

I like folk music, jazz and rock.

I often listen to my MP3 player on the train.

I downloaded some new songs yesterday. Do you want to hear them?

### Error warning

A band means a group of musicians. We do not say 'a music band'.

Nuala had a really good band at her 21st birthday party.

A concert means an event with music. We do not say a 'music concert'.

We're going to a concert tonight.

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

# Exercises

## 24.1 Choose the correct word: *music*, *musical* or *musician*.

- 1 What are your favourite types of *music*..... ?
- 2 My brother thinks he's a good ....., but he's very bad!
- 3 Can you play a ..... instrument?
- 4 I love different types of ....., for example, jazz, rock and classical.
- 5 Which ..... instrument would you like to learn?
- 6 Are there any ..... in your family?

## 24.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



Alex



Donna



Suzanna



Chunshen



Emma



Patricia



William



Bethan

- 1 Suzanna plays the *violin*..... .
- 2 ..... plays the cello in an .....
- 3 Chunshen loves playing the .....
- 4 Donna is having a ..... lesson.
- 5 Alex is a very good .....-player.
- 6 Bethan plays the ..... every evening.
- 7 William ..... the .....
- 8 Emma is learning the ..... . She will be a good flute-..... one day.
- 9 ..... is a violinist.
- 10 ..... wants to be a pianist.

## 24.3 Choose the correct answer, a, b or c.

- 1 I love a) classic **b) classical** c) classist music. Beethoven is my favourite.
- 2 My brother a) can't stand b) can stand c) can't stay folk music but I love it.
- 3 I have some tickets for a) a) concert music b) music concert c) concert at the Town Hall. Would you like one?
- 4 I always a) listen in b) listen to c) listen my MP3 player when I'm studying.
- 5 My sister plays in a) a) music band b) band music c) band with three other girls from her school.

## 24.4 Answer these questions.

- 1 How often do you download music?
- 2 Which musical instrument on the opposite page do you like best?
- 3 Can you play a musical instrument?
- 4 Which musical instrument would you like to learn?
- 5 Do you prefer classical music or pop music?

# 25 Countries and nationalities

## A Continents and countries



continent	country	continent	country
North America	Canada	Australasia	Australia
	USA / the US		New Zealand
South America	Argentina	Asia	China
	Brazil		India
	Chile		Japan
	Colombia		Pakistan
	Peru		Thailand
Europe	Germany	Africa	Egypt
	Italy		Morocco
	Poland		South Africa
	Spain		Tunisia
	the UK		
		Antarctica	

It is not possible to show all the countries of the world on a small page. If your country is not included, check its English name with your teacher or on the Internet.

### Error warning

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

All the nouns and adjectives in this unit always begin with a capital letter, for example Africa [NOT africa].

## B Nationalities

notes	adjective
most country adjectives end in <i>(i)an</i>	American, Argentinian, Australian, Brazilian, Canadian, Colombian, Egyptian, German, Indian, Italian, Moroccan, Peruvian, South African, Tunisian
many country adjectives end in <i>ish</i>	British, English, Finnish, Irish, Polish, Scottish, Spanish
a few country adjectives end in <i>ese</i>	Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese
exceptions	Pakistani, Thai

### Tip

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

Remember that words for languages are often the same as the 'people' adjective, e.g. French, Spanish, Japanese and Thai. One exception is Arabic.



# Exercises

## 25.1 Which countries do these letters make?

- |               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| 1 HINAC China | 4 OCRMOOC  |
| 2 ZIRALB      | 5 ANJAP    |
| 3 PINSA       | 6 DALTHINA |

## 25.2 Match these capital cities to their countries and make sentences.

- 1 Tokyo Tokyo is the capital of Japan.
- 2 Rome
- 3 Canberra
- 4 Bogotá
- 5 Cairo
- 6 London
- 7 Berlin
- 8 Warsaw
- 9 Buenos Aires
- 10 Madrid

Argentina	Australia	Colombia	
Egypt	Germany	Italy	<del>Japan</del>
Poland	Spain	the UK	

## 25.3 Which country is different? (Think of the languages they speak there.) Write sentences.

- 1 Australia, Canada, England, Iceland In England, Canada and Australia they speak English but in Iceland they speak Icelandic.
- 2 Brazil, Chile, Mexico, Spain
- 3 Austria, Germany, Italy, Switzerland
- 4 China, Egypt, Morocco, Saudi Arabia
- 5 Canada, France, Scotland, Switzerland

## 25.4 What is the adjective for these countries?

- |                 |             |
|-----------------|-------------|
| 1 Indian Indian | 6 Spain     |
| 2 Thailand      | 7 Peru      |
| 3 Germany       | 8 China     |
| 4 Egypt         | 9 Australia |
| 5 Argentina     | 10 Poland   |

## 25.5 Write down:

- 1 the name of your country.
- 2 the names of the countries next to your country.
- 3 the name of your language.
- 4 the name for people from your country.

### Follow-up

In which continents are these places? Use the Internet to help you.

Mount Everest Asia  
the Sahara  
the Amazon  
Wagga Wagga  
the Volga  
Mount Kilimanjaro  
the Mississippi  
Mount Fuji  
Lake Titicaca

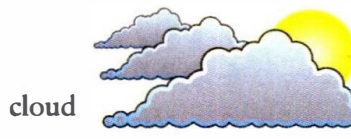
## A Types of weather



sun



rain

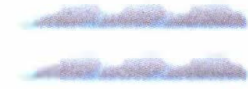


cloud



snow

lightning



fog



wind



thunder

## B Adjectives and verbs

noun	adjective
sun	sunny
rain	rainy
wind	windy
cloud	cloudy
snow	snowy
fog	foggy
thunder	thundery
lightning	–

## C Other useful weather words

It is very hot in Mexico – it is often 45 degrees there in summer.

It is very cold in the Arctic – it is often minus 50 degrees there.

It can be very wet in London – carry an umbrella when you go sightseeing there.

It is very dry in the Sahara – it doesn't often rain there.

A hurricane is a very strong wind.

A storm is when there is a strong wind and rain together.

A thunderstorm is when there is thunder, lightning, rain and sometimes wind together.

## D Expressions

It's a sunny day in Tokyo today, but it's cloudy in Hong Kong.

It's foggy in Sydney and it's snowing / it's snowy in Moscow.

It's raining in Barcelona but the sun is shining in Granada.

It's a lovely day.

It's a horrible day, isn't it!

What's the weather like in your country in June?

It's usually warm and sunny.

## Error warning

We say It's windy / cloudy / foggy / sunny [NOT It's winding / clouding / fogging / sunning].





## Tip




Watch the weather forecast in English on TV or online as often as you can.

# Exercises








**26.1** Match the words and the symbols.

1 snow    2 sun    3 rain    4 fog    5 lightning    6 wind    7 cloud

a     b     c     d 

e     f     g 

**26.2** Look at the chart. Write sentences about the cities in the chart.

	Hanoi	1 It is <u>sunny</u> in Hanoi.
	Hong Kong	2 It is <u>raining</u> in Hong Kong.
	La Paz	3 It is .....
	Paris	4 It .....
	Tashkent	5 .....
	Seoul	6 .....
	Washington	7 .....

**26.3** Complete these sentences with a word from the opposite page.

- The sun shone ..... every day last month.
- When it ....., I take my umbrella.
- What's the ..... like in your country in January?
- When it ....., we can go skiing.
- You see ..... before you hear thunder.
- It is 24 ..... here today.
- It is dangerous to be in a small boat at sea in a .....
- It is very ..... in Siberia in winter.

**26.4** Are these sentences true about the weather in your country? If not, correct them.

- It often snows in December. *It sometimes snows in December.*
- It is usually 40 degrees in summer and minus 20 degrees in winter.
- There are thunderstorms every day in August.
- It is very wet in spring.
- We never have hurricanes.
- Summer is usually hot and dry.

**26.5** What do you like to do or not like to do in these types of weather?

- |                 |                          |               |               |
|-----------------|--------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 fog           | 1 I don't like to drive. | 3 a rainy day | 5 a windy day |
| 2 sunny weather |                          | 4 snow        |               |

## A Places in the town

Train station / railway station – you can get a train here.

Bus station – you can get a bus here.

Shops – you can buy things here. (See Unit 18: Shops and shopping.)

Shopping centre – area of town with a lot of shops.

Tourist information office – tourists can get information here.

Museum – you can see interesting old things here.

Bank – you can change money here or get money from a cash machine.

Post office – you can post letters and parcels here.

Library /'laɪbrəri/ – you can read books and newspapers here.

Town hall – local government officers work here.

Car park – you can park your car here.

Pedestrian area /'eəriə/ – you can only walk here, you can't come here by car.

## B Notices in towns



## C Asking for and giving directions

A: Where is the bus station?

B: Go left here and it's at the end of the road.

A: How do I get to Market Street?

B: Take the first right and then the second left.

A: Is there a shopping centre near here?

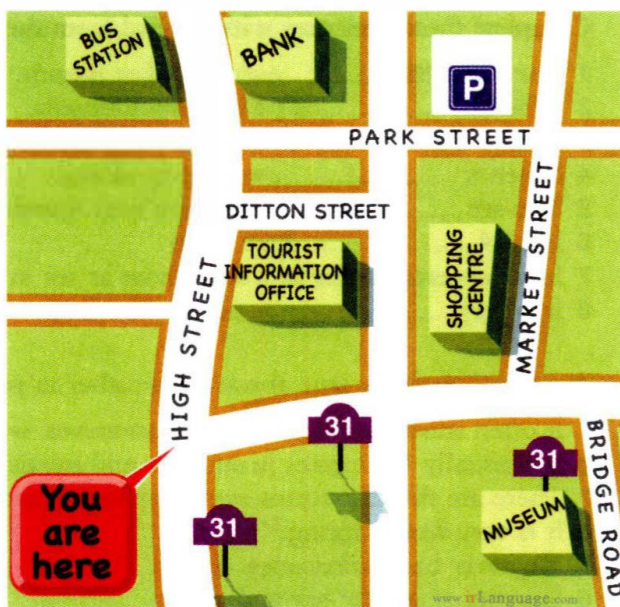
B: Yes, turn right here. The entrance is on Market Street on the left.

A: Can I park here?

B: No, but there's a car park on Park Street.

A: Excuse me, I'm looking for the museum.

B: It's on Bridge Road. Take the number 31 bus and get off at the second stop.



A: Can you tell me the way to the nearest bank, please? I need a cash machine.

B: No problem. Go left here and there's one on the other side of the road.

# Exercises

## 27.1 Answer the questions.

- 1 Where can I get a bus to London? *at the bus station*
- 2 Where can I get information about hotels?
- 3 Where can I change money?
- 4 Where can I park my car?
- 5 Where can I see old and interesting things?
- 6 Where can I get a train?
- 7 Where can I go to a lot of different shops?
- 8 Where can I read today's newspaper? (*I don't want to buy it.*)

## 27.2 Which notice from B opposite will help you?

- 1 The cash machine doesn't give you any money. *Out of order*
- 2 You are in the shopping centre and you want to leave.
- 3 You want to sit in a place where there are no cigarettes.
- 4 You want to know if people can go on the grass.
- 5 You want to go into the museum.

## 27.3 Complete these sentences.

- 1 Turn right at the *end*..... of the road.
- 2 The bus ..... is over there ..... the left.
- 3 For the Town Hall ..... the number 14 bus.
- 4 ..... is a post office on the other ..... of the road.
- 5 You can find a cash ..... at the bank in High Street.
- 6 We can get a map of the town at the tourist ..... office.
- 7 Can you tell me the ..... to the railway ..... , please?
- 8 ..... me. I'm looking ..... a car park.

## 27.4 What words are these?

- |                   |        |                |      |
|-------------------|--------|----------------|------|
| 1 sumuem          | museum | 6 dtaeepsrin   | raae |
| 2 nowt hlal       |        | 7 scah enicmah |      |
| 3 brilyra         |        | 8 tsop ffcoie  |      |
| 4 rac prak        |        | 9 phoss        |      |
| 5 ywrlaai nttoisa |        | 10 sub post    |      |

## 27.5 Look at the map in C opposite. How do you get from the tourist information office to the shopping centre? Write directions.

## 27.6 Does your town have these places? Where are they? Write sentences.

- |                     |  |                 |
|---------------------|--|-----------------|
| 1 a train station   | <i>There's a train station. It's at the end of Station Road.</i> |                 |
| 2 a bus station     | 5 a town hall  | 8 a museum      |
| 3 a shopping centre | 6 a pedestrian area  | 9 a post office |
| 4 a library         | 7 a tourist information office                                   |                 |

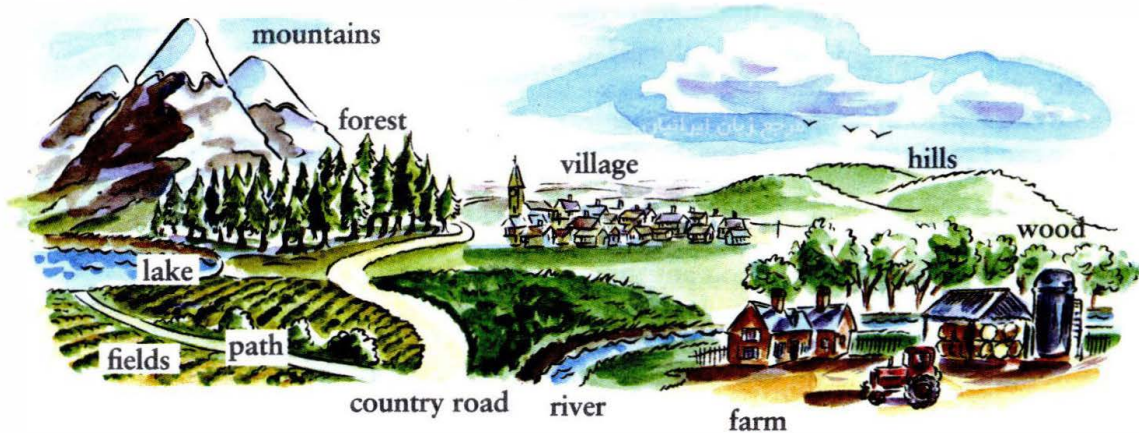
### Tip

Keep a notebook in your pocket. Many towns in different countries have notices in English to help tourists. Write down any English words and expressions that you see in your town.

# 28 In the countryside

The countryside and the country both mean 'not the city'. Country can also mean a nation (e.g. France, China).

## A Things we can see in the countryside



## B Living and working in the countryside

In the countryside, people usually live in a small town (e.g. 6,000 people) or village /vɪlɪdʒ/ (e.g. 700 people).

A farmer lives on a farm and works in the fields.

My friend lives in a cottage. /'kɒtɪdʒ/ [small house in a village or the countryside]

## C Nature /'neɪtʃə/ and conservation /kɒnsə'veɪʃn/

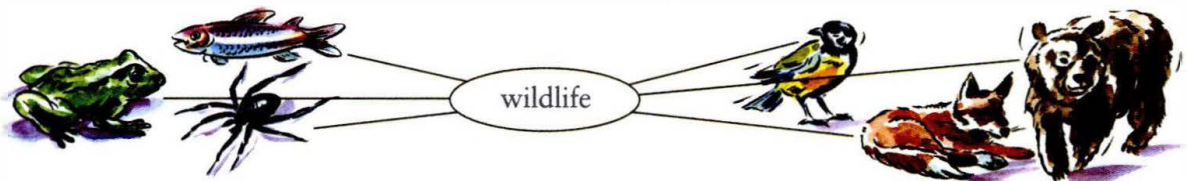
Nature means 'everything in the natural world'. (= animals, birds, plants, etc.)

### Error warning

I love nature [NOT I love the nature]. I like walking in the countryside [NOT I like walking in the nature]. 'Nature' is not a place.

www.irLanguage.com

There is wonderful wildlife in the north of the country. [animals, birds, fish and insects]



Near the village there is a conservation area. [place where wildlife and nature are protected]

In the south of the country, there is a national park. [very big national conservation area]

## D Things to do in the countryside

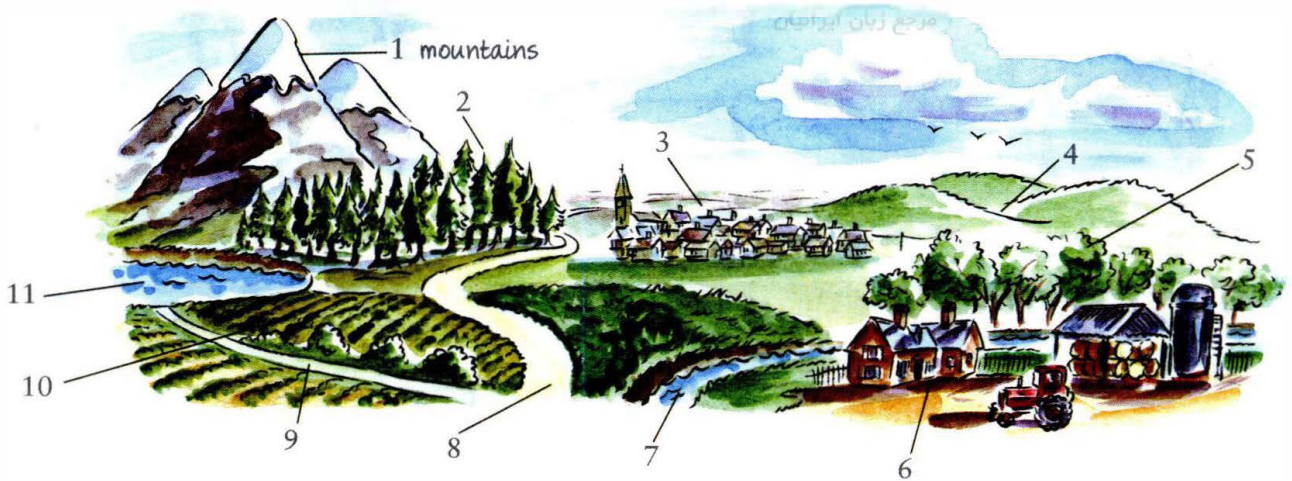
You can take food and drink and have a picnic.

You can go walking / skiing in the mountains.



# Exercises

**28.1** Cover the opposite page. How many names of things in the countryside can you remember?



**28.2** Fill the gaps in these sentences.

- 1 My brother is a farmer. He lives on a *farm*..... .
- 2 It's not a big house; it's just a .....
- 3 The farm is near a ..... which has 800 people.
- 4 Twenty kilometres from the village there is a small ..... . It has 9,000 people.

**28.3** Match the beginning of the sentences on the left with the ends of the sentences on the right.

- |                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 We went swimming               | sitting by the river.            |
| 2 We went walking                | in the national park.            |
| 3 We went skiing                 | in the lake. The water was warm. |
| 4 We saw some wonderful wildlife | along a five-kilometre path.     |
| 5 We had a picnic                | down the mountain.               |

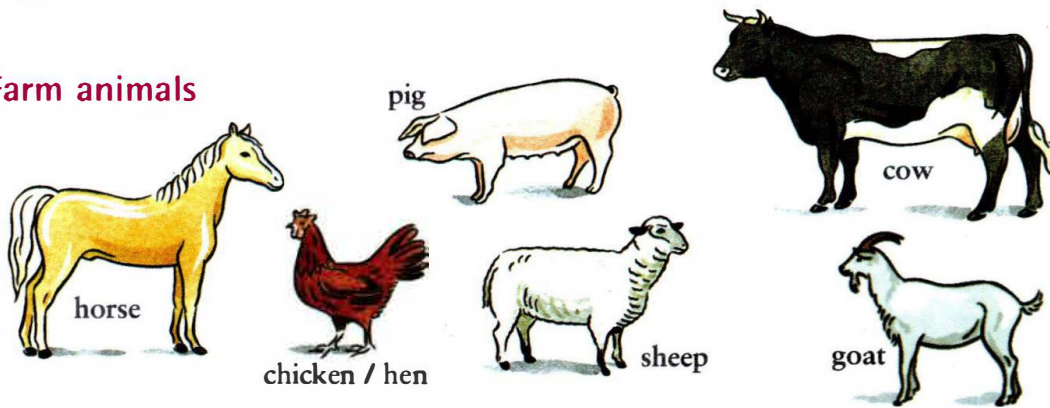
**28.4** Put *the* in the sentences if necessary.

- 1 My parents live in *the*..... countryside.
- 2 He loves ..... nature.
- 3 She wants to live in ..... country.
- 4 They are interested in ..... wildlife.

**28.5** Describe the typical countryside where you come from. Write eight sentences about it. Use these questions to help you.

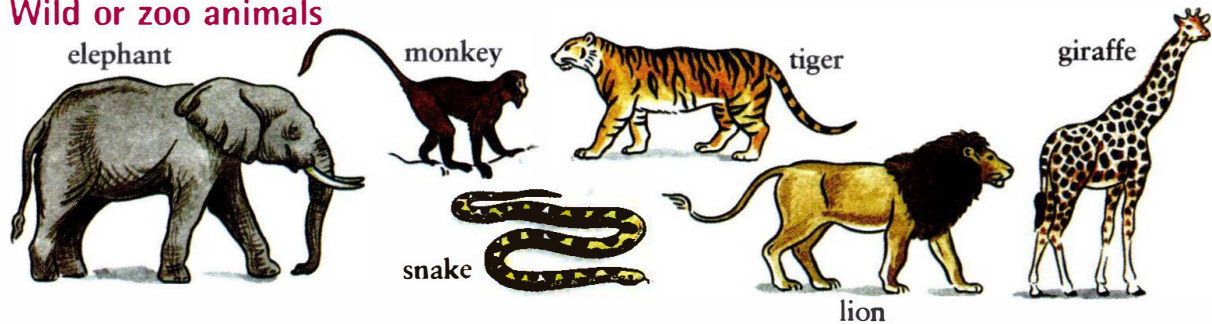
- 1 Are there any woods or forests? *There are some big forests.*
- 2 Are there any hills or mountains?
- 3 Are there any lakes or rivers?
- 4 Are there many villages or small towns?
- 5 Are there farms?
- 6 Are there paths where you can walk?
- 7 Can you go skiing?
- 8 Can you see wildlife?

### A Farm animals



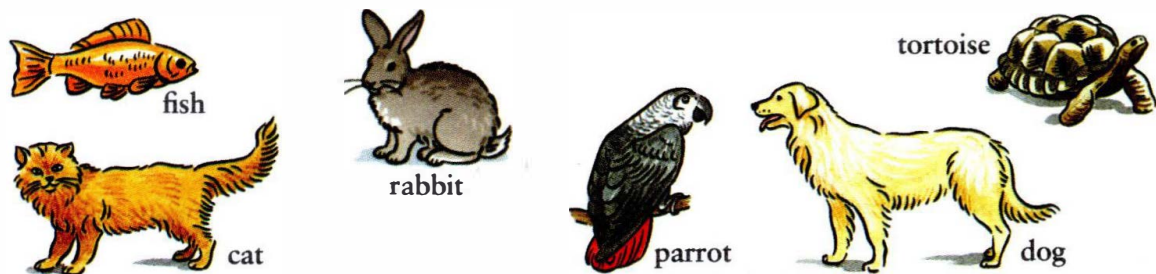
animal	produce	baby
horse	hair, meat	foal
cow	milk, leather, meat (beef)	calf
sheep	wool, meat (lamb)	lamb
pig	meat (pork, bacon, ham)	piglet
chicken / hen	eggs, meat (chicken)	chick
goat	milk, goatskin, meat	kid

### B Wild or zoo animals



### C Pets

These animals are often pets.



A parrot is a bird.

### D Expressions

Take your dog for a walk every day.

You must feed your animals and give them water every day.

Do you have any pets?



مرجع زبان ایرانیان

# Exercises

## 29.1 Complete these sentences.

- 1 A tortoise..... goes to sleep in winter.
- 2 A ..... has a very long neck.
- 3 ..... and ..... are birds.
- 4 ..... and ..... are large cats.
- 5 You can ride a ..... and an .....
- 6 ..... swim and ..... fly.
- 7 ..... are farm birds.
- 8 ..... are very good at hopping and jumping.
- 9 Don't forget to ..... the cat and to ..... it some water.
- 10 I ..... my dog for a walk every day before school.

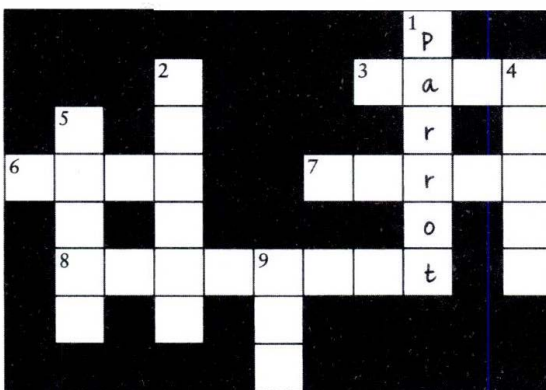
## 29.2 Match the animal with its meat and with its young animal.

<i>animal</i>	<i>meat</i>	<i>young</i>
goat	lamb	calf
sheep	chicken	piglet
cow	pork	lamb
hen	beef	kid
pig	goat	chick

## 29.3 Look at the animals opposite. Find three animals which:

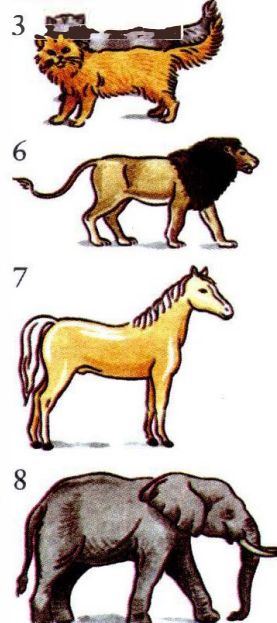
- 1 eat meat. lions.....
- 2 give us things that we wear. ....
- 3 produce their babies in eggs. ....
- 4 we can eat. ....

## 29.4 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.

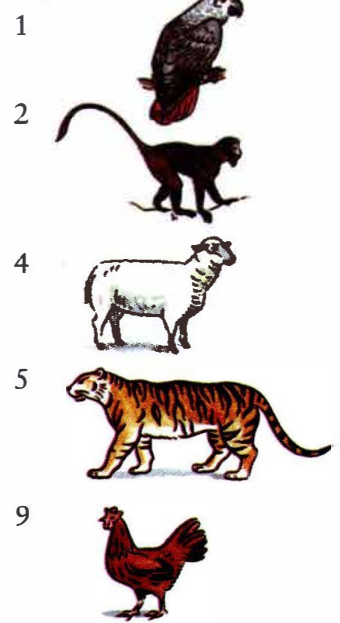


www.irLanguage.com

### Across



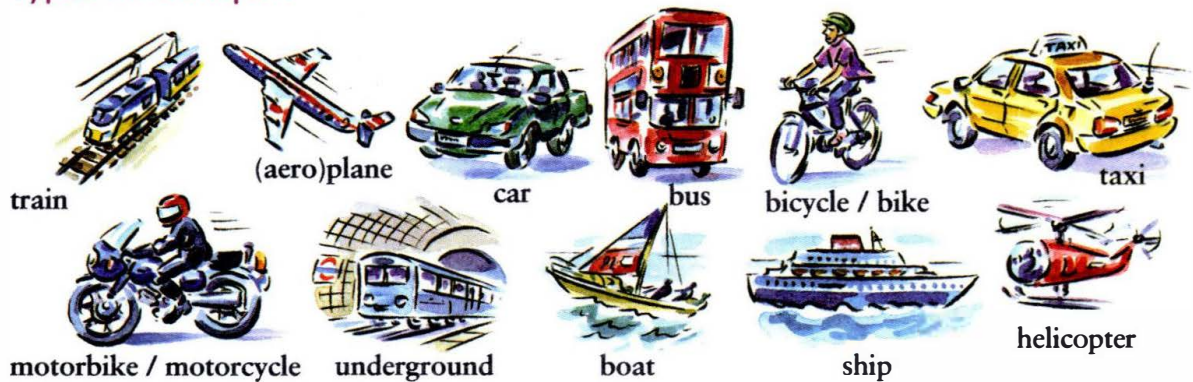
### Down



## 29.5 There are 18 different animals in the pictures on the opposite page. Close the book. How many of these animals can you remember?

# 30 Travelling

## A Types of transport



## B Useful travel words



Can I have a **single / return** (ticket) to Barcelona, please?  
 (single = Madrid to Barcelona; return = Madrid to Barcelona and back to Madrid)

I'd like to **book / reserve** a seat in advance. [to make sure you have a seat]

### Error warning

Was the journey long? [NOT Was the ~~travel~~ long?]

## C By train

The train arriving at platform 3 is the 16:50 train to Paris.

The Edinburgh train **departs / leaves** from platform 6. (*departs* is formal)

Is there a restaurant car on this train?

A: Do I have to **change trains** for Toulouse? [get off one train and get onto another]

B: No, it's a direct train.

## D By plane

You have to **check in** two hours before the plane takes off. [leaves the ground]

Online check-in is also possible. / You can **check in** online.

Give your boarding card to the **flight attendant** when you get on the plane.

Have a good **flight**.

The plane **lands** in New York at 14:30.

After landing you have to go through **customs**.

### Error warning

I went through **customs** but nobody checked my passport [NOT ~~controlled~~ my passport].

## E By car

We hired a car for a week. We had to **fill** it up with petrol.

Can I give you a **lift**? I'm going into town.

(See Unit 17: Holidays and Unit 47: Moving for more useful words about travelling.)

# Exercises

## 30.1 Match the words on the left with their definitions on the right.

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| 1 land           | a a place to eat on a train                                    |
| 2 direct         | b bags and suitcases   |
| 3 restaurant car | c it says when trains depart and arrive                        |
| 4 ship           | d you do not have to change to a different plane / train / bus |
| 5 timetable      | e planes do this at airports                                   |
| 6 platform       | f it travels on water, e.g. the <i>Titanic</i>                 |
| 7 luggage        | g where you stand when you are waiting for a train             |

## 30.2 Are these sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

- 1 A single ticket takes you to a place and back again. *False. A return ticket takes you to a place and back again.*
- 2 At customs, people check what you bring into the country.
- 3 Planes land at the beginning of a journey.
- 4 You need a boarding card to get off a plane.
- 5 Hiring a car is the same as buying a car.
- 6 If you give someone a lift they travel in your car.

## 30.3 Here are directions from the airport to John's house.

When you arrive at the airport, take a number 10 bus to the station. Then take a train to Bigtown. The journey takes half an hour and you get off the train at the second stop. Take a taxi from the station to John's house.

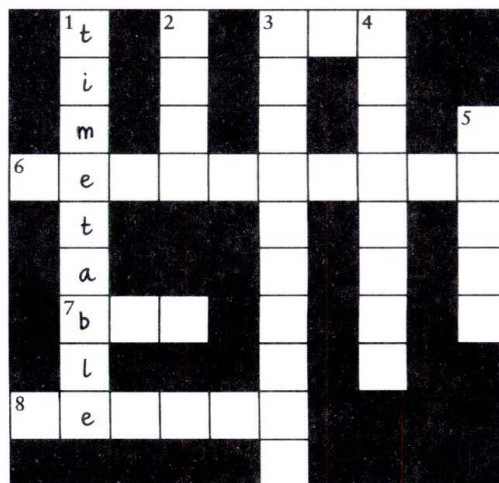
Now write directions from the train station to your house.

## 30.4 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.

Across



Down



### Follow-up



Make cards to test yourself. Write the word on one side of the card and a picture (or a definition or translation) on the other side. Look at the pictures (or definitions or translations). Can you remember the English words?

# 31 UK culture

## A Special days

festival	date	what people do	
Christmas	25th December	send Christmas cards give presents spend time with their families decorate a Christmas tree eat a lot	
New Year's Eve / Hogmanay (Scotland)	31st December	sing and dance toast the New Year	
New Year's Day	1st January	a <b>bank holiday</b> [day when most organisations are closed]	
Valentine's Day	14th February	send cards to boyfriend / girlfriend / husband / wife	
Easter	dates vary	give children Easter eggs [chocolate eggs]	
Halloween	31st October	children dress up children knock at doors and ask for sweets	
Bonfire Night	5th November	have a bonfire and fireworks	

## B Food

Traditional UK food is **fish and chips**  and **roast beef and roast potatoes** [cooked in the oven] with **Yorkshire pudding**. [dish made of flour, milk and eggs] 

Chicken **tikka masala** [a kind of curry] comes from India, but is very popular in the UK. 

## C Education

type of school	what it is
nursery school	for children aged 2–4
primary school	for children aged 5–11
secondary school	for children aged 12–18
state school	parents don't pay for children to go here
private school	parents pay for children to go here

## D Politics

The UK has a royal family, with a **king** or a **queen**.

Political decisions are made at the **Houses of Parliament**.

The **Prime Minister** is the political leader of the UK.



# Exercises

## 31.1 Which festivals do these pictures show?



1 Halloween .....



3 .....



5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

## 31.2 Look at the pictures. Find 10 more words connected with food in the puzzle.



C	H	I	C	K	E	N	F	D	K	N
R	Y	O	R	K	S	H	I	R	E	P
O	C	V	O	M	T	R	S	M	V	U
A	Q	E	W	A	A	T	H	X	L	D
S	M	V	C	S	H	G	E	Q	L	D
T	P	O	T	A	T	O	E	S	C	I
D	F	G	B	L	B	K	U	V	U	N
X	Z	O	E	A	P	I	V	Z	R	G
A	N	D	E	C	H	I	P	S	R	B
C	W	Q	F	T	I	K	K	A	Y	J

## 31.3 Answer these questions about traditional UK food.

- 1 What do British people traditionally eat with fish? chips
- 2 Where does chicken tikka masala come from?
- 3 What is chicken tikka masala a kind of?
- 4 Do British people eat Yorkshire pudding after their main course?
- 5 In or on which part of the cooker do you make roast beef and roast potatoes?

## 31.4 Which kind of school do these British children go to?

- 1 Meena is seven. Her parents pay for her to go to school. a private primary school
- 2 Alex is 14. His school is free.
- 3 Tim and Masha are three.
- 4 Mehmet is ten. His parents don't pay for him to go to school.
- 5 Nick is 16. His parents pay for him to go to school.

## 31.5 Answer these questions about politics in the UK.

- 1 Who is Prime Minister at the moment?
- 2 Where does the Prime Minister work?
- 3 Who is head of the royal family at the moment?

### Tip

www.irLanguage.com

Learn about UK life by using the BBC Learning English website which has up-to-date articles and news stories: <http://www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/learningenglish/>

# 32 Crime

## A Crimes and criminals



<i>crime</i>	robbery	murder /'mɜːdə/	burglary /'bɜːgləri/	mugging [attacking a person in a public place and stealing their money]
<i>person</i>	a robber	a murderer	a burglar	a mugger
<i>verb</i>	to rob somebody or a place (e.g. a bank)	to murder somebody	to break into a house / flat (break / broke / broken)	to mug somebody



<i>crime</i>	car theft	drug dealing	terrorism	shoplifting
<i>person</i>	a car thief /θiːf/	a drug dealer	a terrorist	a shoplifter
<i>verb</i>	to steal a car (steal / stole / stolen)	to sell drugs (sell / sold / sold)	to attack somebody or a place	to steal things from a shop

There was a burglary at the school last night.  
 John West murdered his wife.  
 There are a lot of muggings in the city centre.  
 The bank was robbed yesterday. My sister was robbed last week.

### Error warning

A thief steals something (steal / stole / stolen).  
 Somebody stole my bicycle. [NOT Somebody robbed my bicycle.]

I was robbed last night. [NOT I was stolen.]

## B The law /lɔː/

A student was arrested for shoplifting this morning.  
 The police came to the school and spoke to his teacher.  
 The student has to go to court next week.  
 If he is guilty he will have to pay a fine. /'gɪlti/  
 If he is innocent he can go home. /'ɪnəsənt/  
 I don't think he will go to prison.

## C Other crime problems

Some vandals broke the windows in the telephone box.  
 [A vandal breaks and smashes things.]  
 We have a lot of vandalism in my town.  
 A lot of people take drugs nowadays.  
 Is football hooliganism a problem in your country? /'huːlɪgənɪzəm/  
 [A football hooligan is a person who goes to a football match and makes trouble.]

# Exercises

## 32.1 What do we call someone ...

- 1 who steals cars? a car thief
- 2 who kills someone?
- 3 who steals things from shops?
- 4 who robs people's houses and flats?
- 5 who attacks someone in the street and steals their money?
- 6 who sells illegal drugs?

## 32.2 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

- 1 There were a lot of football ~~hooligans~~..... near the stadium.
- 2 The police officer arr..... her for shoplifting.
- 3 Some van..... destroyed all the flowers in the park.
- 4 He had to pay a fi..... of £50 for parking his car in the wrong place.
- 5 There are a lot of bur..... in this part of the city, so always close the windows.
- 6 The police made a mistake; she was inn..... . She did not steal the money.
- 7 A group of terr..... have attacked the airport.
- 8 He murdered his wife. He was in pr..... for 20 years.

## 32.3 True or false?

- 1 A burglar goes into someone's house and steals things. True
- 2 Vandals take people's money.
- 3 A murderer kills someone.
- 4 A car thief is someone who drives very badly or dangerously.
- 5 If you are guilty it means you are the person who did the crime.

## 32.4 Choose the right word to complete each sentence.

- 1 My brother was robbed / stolen yesterday.
- 2 Someone *robbed* / *stole* my bike last night.
- 3 My local bank has been *robbed* / *stolen*.
- 4 Who has *robbed* / *stolen* my pen?
- 5 Someone *robbed* / *stole* our TV when we were on holiday.
- 6 Where were you when your keys were *robbed* / *stolen*?

### Follow-up

Give your opinion. What do you think should happen to these people?

- 1 A man murdered his wife and three children. He should go to prison for 30 years.
- 2 A student with no money stole a book from a bookshop.
- 3 A woman sold some drugs to a teenager.
- 4 Some terrorists attacked a bus and killed five people.
- 5 A woman parked her car and blocked the traffic.
- 6 A teenager damaged some trees in the park.

# 33 The media

## A Radio and TV programmes

The news is on TV at 6 o'clock every night. [important things that happen]

Do you watch soaps / soap operas? *Home and Away* is my favourite. [Soaps are stories about people's lives. They are often on TV every day.]

I like nature programmes best. [programmes about animals, birds, etc.]

I watched a documentary last night about drugs and crime. [programme looking at a social problem or question]

In talk shows, people talk about themselves or discuss topics with an interviewer.

The children watch cartoons on Saturday mornings. (For example, Disney films with animals that talk. See Unit 22: Cinema.)

My brother likes watching reality TV. [programmes that film real people living their lives, not actors]

I always watch sports programmes.

## B Newspapers and magazines

In most countries there are morning (news)papers and evening (news)papers.

Every month, I buy a magazine.

My mother buys women's magazines.

I like news magazines like *Newsweek* and *Time*.

In most magazines and newspapers there are lots of adverts / advertisements. [something that tries to persuade people to buy something]

Other types of magazines: sports magazines / computer magazines / teenage magazines. (See Unit 23: Free time at home.)

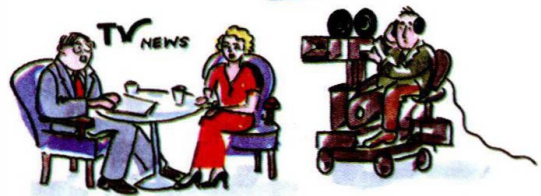


## C People and the media

There was an interview with the US President on TV last night.

The reporters are outside Zelda Glitzberg's house. [people who go out and get the news stories where they happen]

My sister is a journalist; she writes for *The Oxford Times* newspaper. [person who writes articles]



## D Expressions

You can read newspapers or watch TV online.

What's your favourite TV programme?

What's on TV tonight?

Is it OK if I change the channel?



**Error warning**

The news is on now. [NOT The news are on now.]



# Exercises

## 33.1 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

- 1 Ten million people watch this programme..... every week. It's very popular.
- 2 The news ..... on channel 3 at 9 o'clock every night.
- 3 There was a ..... about traffic problems in cities on TV last night.
- 4 I saw a ..... programme about birds in Antarctica.
- 5 My sister is 13; she reads a ..... magazine every week. She likes the stories about boys.
- 6 With my computer I can read the sports news .....
- 7 I'd like to watch the news now. Is it OK if I ..... the channel?
- 8 Did you see the ..... with the Prime Minister last night?

## 33.2 Match the left-hand column with the type of programme on the right.

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 Talking about family problems                                       | a International news   |
| 2 Film of elephants in Africa   | b Sports programme     |
| 3 Football cup final  | c Reality TV programme |
| 4 Reports from all over the world                                     | d Soap (opera)         |
| 5 Maria decides not to marry Philip                                   | e Nature programme     |
| 6 Ten people in a house – they cannot leave or talk to anyone outside | f Talk show            |

## 33.3 What do you call ...

- 1 a person who goes out and gets stories for newspapers? a reporter
- 2 a person who writes articles in newspapers and magazines?
- 3 a newspaper you can buy every day after about 5 pm?
- 4 a programme with stories made from lots of pictures?
- 5 a programme on TV about animals, birds, etc?
- 6 something in a magazine or on TV that tries to sell something?
- 7 something like CNN or Sky Sports?
- 8 a meeting when a reporter asks a person questions for TV or a newspaper?

## 33.4 Answer these questions for yourself.

- 1 Do you read a morning or an evening newspaper?
- 2 What kinds of magazine do you read?
- 3 What will you watch on TV tonight?
- 4 What is your favourite TV channel?
- 5 How many hours of TV do you watch every day?
- 6 What are your favourite kinds of TV programmes?
- 7 Do you ever watch TV online?
- 8 Do you like watching adverts on TV?

### Follow-up

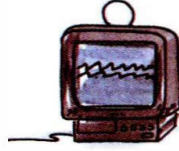
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Go to <http://www.bbc.co.uk/> Listen to radio programmes and download podcasts that interest you.

# 34 Problems at home and work

## A At home

The TV isn't working. Can you repair it?



The washing machine is broken. We need to mend it.



The plants are dying. Did you forget to water them?



The room is untidy. We must tidy it.



I've lost my keys. Will you help me look for them?



You've cut your finger. You should put on a plaster.

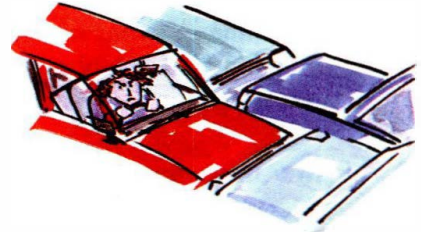


You've had a row /rau/ with a friend. Will you apologise? [say 'I'm sorry']

## B At work

Carla had a bad day at work yesterday. She was late for work.

She had too much work to do.



Her colleague was in a bad mood.

Her computer crashed.



The photocopier was out of order.



The coffee machine wasn't working.



### Tip

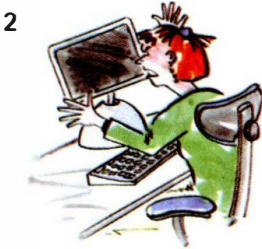
[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

When you need to make a list of things to do, make it in English, e.g.

Mend my bike    Water the plants  
Tidy my desk

# Exercises

**34.1** Look at the pictures. What is the problem?



- 1 The coffee machine isn't working.....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....

**34.2** Write down three nouns that can go with these words:

- 1 broken window / cup / glass .....
- 2 cut .....
- 3 untidy .....
- 4 late for .....
- 5 a ..... that isn't working
- 6 too much .....

**34.3** Have you ever had these problems? Number each one 0-3 (0 = never, 1 = once or twice, 2 = quite often, 3 = frequently).

- |                                       |   |                            |
|---------------------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| 1 a TV that doesn't work              | 2 | 7 a broken washing machine |
| 2 dying plants                        |   | 8 an untidy bedroom        |
| 3 a cut finger                        |   | 9 a row with a friend      |
| 4 being late for work or school       |   | 10 your computer crashes   |
| 5 a colleague or friend in a bad mood |   | 11 lost keys               |
| 6 a coffee machine that isn't working |   | 12 too much work           |

**34.4** Look at Carla's problems in B. What could she do?

She was late for work - get a new alarm clock.

**34.5** Can you think of four problems that you or a friend have had recently? Write them down in English. Use a dictionary to help you.

.....

.....

# 35 Global problems

## A Natural disasters

There was a hurricane / snowstorm / forest fire there last year.

hurricane [a very strong wind]

snowstorm [a lot of snow and wind at the same time]

forest fire [when it is very dry and trees catch fire]



San Francisco has had a lot of earthquakes. [when the earth moves]

There were serious floods in the north yesterday. [too much water]

The river often floods after heavy rain. [water goes over the river banks]

## B Man-made problems

There are too many people in some places. Cities are too crowded.

Many people are:

poor [they do not have enough money]

hungry [they do not have enough food]

homeless [they do not have a place to live]

unemployed [they do not have a job]

There is a lot of pollution in many places. [when the air, water or earth is dirty and bad for people, plants and animals]

The river is polluted and a lot of fish have died.

The air pollution is very bad today.

The American War of Independence started in 1775 and ended in 1783. [fighting between two or more countries or nationalities] It lasted for eight years.

The teachers are on strike today. [when people refuse to work because, for example, they want more money]

He had a car crash on the way to work.

The traffic jams in the city are terrible in the rush hour. [times when everyone is going to work]



# Exercises

## 35.1 What problems can you see in the pictures?



1 strike .....



4 .....



7 .....



2 .....



5 .....



8 .....



3 .....



6 .....



9 .....

## 35.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- 1 air
- 2 traffic
- 3 rush
- 4 forest
- 5 crowded
- 6 homeless
- 7 car
- 8 earth

- fire
- people
- pollution
- quake
- jam
- hour
- cities
- crash

## 35.3 Find the words that match these definitions.

- 1 a very strong wind a hurricane
- 2 so many cars on the road that they can't easily move
- 3 a street with a large number of people
- 4 when two cars hit one another
- 5 without work
- 6 the time of day when there is most traffic
- 7 without enough to eat
- 8 when a lot of trees burn

## 35.4 Look at the opposite page and find ...

- 1 two problems on the roads. traffic jam, car crash
- 2 two things that pollute the air. ....
- 3 two problems that can be political. ....
- 4 three problems that are caused by the weather. ....
- 5 four adjectives that can describe people. ....

## 35.5 Fill the gaps with a word from the opposite page.

- 1 Cars make air pollution worse in towns.
- 2 Their wages were very low so the workers went on .....
- 3 My great-grandfather died in the First World .....
- 4 Jack had a ..... last year but fortunately no one was hurt.
- 5 Japan often has ..... and Siberia often has .....
- 6 When people are ..... they sometimes sleep on the streets.
- 7 I hate driving in the city in the .....
- 8 The water is so ..... that people cannot drink it.

**Tip** [www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)  
 Try to listen to or watch the news in English every day. Make a note of new words about global problems that you find.

# 36 Have / had / had

## A What can you have?

You can ...

have breakfast lunch dinner a meal

have a party a meeting a game (of football, etc.)

have a lesson an exam homework

have a cup of tea / coffee a drink an ice cream some cheese

have a shower /'ʃaʊə/ a bath a swim



## B Expressions with have

Is that your camera? Can I have a look? [look at it]

Is that your bicycle? Can I have a go? [ride it]

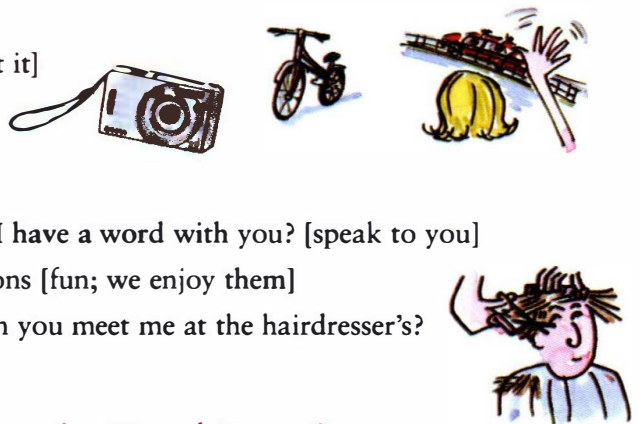
Goodbye! Have a good journey! [somebody is going away]

Do you have a moment? [have some time] Can I have a word with you? [speak to you]

We always have a good time in our English lessons [fun; we enjoy them]

I'm going to have my hair cut. See you later. Can you meet me at the hairdresser's?

I want to learn to ski but I don't have the time.



## C Have + got (speaking / informal) = have (writing / formal)

I've got three sisters. Have you got any brothers and sisters?

My house is big. It's got five bedrooms and three bathrooms.

We've got ten minutes before the train goes.

Have you got a pen?

(in a shop) A: Do you sell postcards? B: Yes, but we haven't got any at the moment.

I've got a problem. Can I have a word with you?

I've got a cold / a headache. /'hedɪk/

## D Have got to (speaking / informal) = have to (writing / formal)

We use have (got) to when the situation means you are obliged to do something.

The museum's not free. You have to / you've got to pay \$10 to go in.

All students have to do an exam.

My sister needs the car, so I've got to walk to school every day this week.

### Error warning

In the past, we use had to, without 'got'. When I was a student, I had to write an essay every week [NOT I had got to write an essay].

### Tip

Group expressions together which belong to the same topic, for example, have + words for meals (breakfast, lunch, dinner), have + 'study' words (an exam, a test, a lesson, a class), etc.

# Exercises

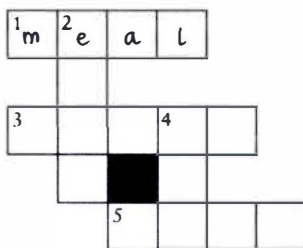
## 36.1 Fill the gaps in the sentences. Use words from A and B opposite.

- 1 I always have *coffee*..... in the morning.
- 2 I have a tennis ..... every Saturday morning. My teacher is excellent.
- 3 Do you want to have a game of ..... ?
- 4 Jane's having a ..... on Saturday. Are you going?
- 5 Do you want to have a ..... ? The bathroom's just here.
- 6 I have an ..... tomorrow, so I have to study tonight.
- 7 We must have a ..... to talk about these problems.
- 8 I'm going to the cafeteria to have a ..... . Do you want to come?
- 9 The hotel has a swimming pool, so we can have a ..... every day.
- 10 We can have ..... before the film, or we can eat after it.

## 36.2 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Please phone Grandma when you have ~~the~~ moment. a
- 2 Nadia has gone to the hairdresser's to have cut her hair.
- 3 That computer game looks great. Can I have a going?
- 4 I want to have some words with my teacher after the lesson.
- 5 Mum didn't have the times to go to the shop today.
- 6 They don't have got any cake in the café today.

## 36.3 Complete the crossword.



### Across

- 1 You have it in a restaurant.
- 3 People often have one on their birthday.
- 5 Do you want to have a ..... of tennis?

### Down

- 2 You have it at school or university.
- 4 If you don't like coffee, you can have .....

## 36.4 What do you say?

- 1 (*someone is thirsty*) Why don't you have a *drink*..... ?
- 2 (*someone is going away*) Bye! Have a ..... !
- 3 (*someone sneezes [Atishoo!] and has a red nose*) Oh! Have you got a ..... ?
- 4 (*someone has a new camera*) Is that new? Can I have a ..... ?

## 36.5 Answer the questions.

- 1 Have you got any brothers or sisters?
- 2 What time do you have English lessons?
- 3 What do you have for lunch?
- 4 Do you have to go to lessons every day?
- 5 How many pens have you got with you now?
- 6 Do you always have a good time in your English classes?

# Go / went / gone

## A Go

Go means to move from one place to another.

I go to work by bike. My brother goes by car.

We went to Paris last summer.

Is this train going to Granada?



Shall we go to the swimming pool today?

Where does this road go?



## B Go + prepositions

Kim went **in(to)** his room and shut the door.



Yuko went **out of** the house and **into** the garden.



Arthur was tired. He went **up** the stairs slowly.



The phone was ringing. She went **down** the stairs quickly.



## C Future plans

Be going to is often used to talk about future plans.

Jan is **going to** study maths at university.

We're **going to** visit my aunt in New York soon.

I'm **going to** learn five new words every day.

## D Expressions Go + -ing for activities

Go is often used with **-ing** for different activities.



I hate **going shopping**.



I usually **go swimming** in the morning.



Let's **go dancing**.



Do you like **going sightseeing** when you are on holiday?



Hans **goes skiing** every winter.



Bob is **going fishing** today.

### Error warning

Let's go swimming and then go shopping. [NOT Let's go ~~to~~ /for swimming and then go ~~to~~ /for shopping.]

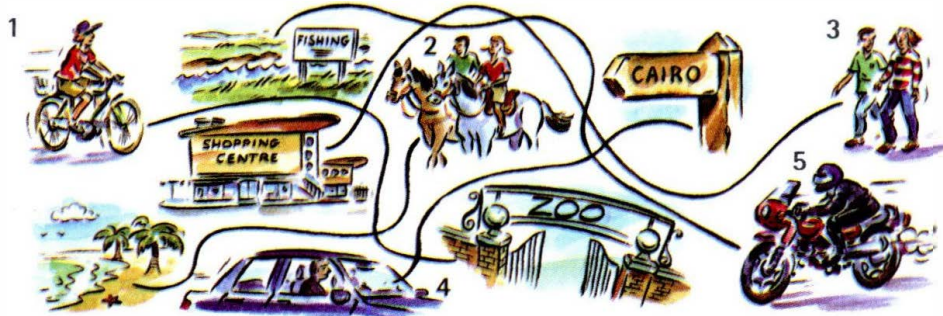
I go there every week. I don't want to go anywhere / somewhere else. [NOT I go ~~to~~ there every week. I don't want to go ~~to~~ anywhere / somewhere else.]

I must go home at 10 o'clock. [NOT I must go ~~to~~ /at home at 10 o'clock.]



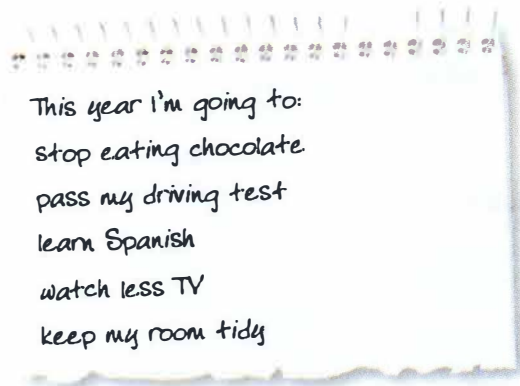
# Exercises

**37.1** Where are these people going? Follow the lines.



- 1 Pablo is going to the zoo.
- 2 The Sharps .....
- 3 Lili and Karl .....
- 4 Imran .....
- 5 Jan .....

**37.2** Write about Alison's New Year Resolutions.



- 1 This year Alison is going to stop eating chocolate.
- 2 This year .....
- 3 This year .....
- 4 This year .....
- 5 This year .....

**37.3** Look at the activities in D opposite. Which do you do on holiday? Write sentences.

I usually go shopping on holiday.

**37.4** Where do trains, buses and roads go to from your town?

From Cambridge, trains go to London and to Norwich.

**37.5** Are these sentences correct? If not, correct them.

- 1 It's time to go at home now.  
X It's time to go home now.
- 2 Mum is going for shopping this afternoon.
- 3 I'm going to London by car tomorrow.
- 4 I love Paris. Did you go to there last year?
- 5 Milos is going to home at 4 o'clock.
- 6 We always go to the same café. Let's go to somewhere different today.
- 7 Excuse me, please. Where does this bus go?
- 8 I go to swimming every Sunday morning.
- 9 We're going sightsee today.
- 10 Jo went down to the top of the hill.
- 11 Let's go to fish today.
- 12 She went out off the shop.
- 13 Please go away. I'm tired.
- 14 Would you like to go to home now?

## Follow-up

Look in an English story book. Find five examples of go. Write them down in your vocabulary notebook.

# 38 Do / did / done

## A Do as auxiliary

<i>questions</i>	Do you like tennis?	Did they like the film?
<i>short answers</i>	Yes, I do. So does Sinjit.	Yes, they did. So did I.
<i>negatives</i>	He doesn't play well.	Jo didn't see it.

## B What are you doing?

Do as a general verb:

On Saturdays I usually do nothing. I just relax.



Don't do that, Tommy.



What are the people in the picture doing?  
They're dancing.



## C What do you do?

A: What do you do? (= What is your job?)

B: I'm a student. / I'm a secretary.

A: What does your wife do? (= What's your wife's job?)

B: She's a doctor. / She's a teacher.

(See Unit 14: Jobs.)

## D Do + activity

- do the housework
- do the gardening
- do the washing
- do the washing-up
- do your homework
- do some exercises
- do business with
- do your best



A: Did you do the washing this morning?

B: No, I'm going to do it later.

Our company does a lot of business with the US.

The homework is very difficult – just do your best.

### Tip

Make a note of any expressions with do that you find when you are reading in English.  
See Unit 39 for the contrast between do and make.

# Exercises

**38.1** Write questions and answers about the people in the picture.



- 1 (the boy) What is the boy doing? He's eating an ice cream.
- 2 (the girls) .....
- 3 (the dog) .....
- 4 (the man in the house) .....
- 5 (the woman) .....
- 6 (the man in the garden) .....

**38.2** Write questions and answers about the jobs of the people in the pictures.

1 Lee Atkins

2 Lara Brown

2 Sophie Hicks

4 Jo and Ted



- 1 What does Lee Atkins do? He's a teacher.
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....

**38.3** Write questions about what the people in Exercise 38.2 did this morning. Answer the questions using the correct form of the phrases in the box.

talk to five patients    ~~teach three lessons~~    write an essay    go to a meeting

- 1 What did Lee Atkins do? He taught three lessons.
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....

**38.4** Look at the *do* expressions in D. Write sentences using these activities.

I do a lot of housework but I never do the gardening.

**38.5** Correct the mistakes in this dialogue.

ANNA: Where did you ~~went~~ on your holidays? To London? go  
 PAVEL: No, we don't go to London this year. We went to Scotland.  
 ANNA: Do your grandmother lives in Scotland?  
 PAVEL: No, she don't but my uncle do.

# 39 Make / made / made

## A Make ...

Dad is making some coffee.



Mum is making dinner.



I'll make some tea / hot chocolate. /'tʃɒklət/

I make breakfast / lunch / dinner every day.

He's making a photocopy.



She's making a film / video.



## B It makes me (feel) ...

Going by train always makes me (feel) tired.

My friend called me stupid. It made me (feel) angry.

That film made me (feel) sad.



## C Expressions

You use make NOT do in these expressions:

I made a mistake in the exercise.

I want to make an appointment with the doctor. [fix a time to see him/her]

When I get up I make my bed.

The children are making a noise.

Yes, and they are making a mess in the living room!

I love your new dress – you made a good choice.

### Error warning

You do homework [NOT make homework]. You take or do an exam [NOT make an exam].  
You take a photo [NOT make a photo]. You do the washing [NOT make the washing].

# Exercises

## 39.1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *make*.

- 1 I always *make* ..... a lot of mistakes when I speak English.
- 2 Our neighbours had a party last night. They ..... a lot of noise.
- 3 I am ..... dinner for my parents this evening.
- 4 What do you think, the silver car or the white one? We must ..... our choice today.
- 5 I ..... an appointment with the doctor for you. It's at 5 o'clock.
- 6 Craig is in the kitchen. He is ..... a cup of tea.

## 39.2 Complete the sentences with *make(s) / made me feel* + an adjective from the box.

sick   tired   ~~sad~~   happy   angry

- 1 That film about the war *made me feel sad* .....
- 2 Long lessons always .....
- 3 She was horrible to me; it .....
- 4 It's a lovely song. It .....
- 5 That meal was horrible. It .....

## 39.3 What are these people doing? Complete the sentences using *make*.



1 He's *making a photocopy*.....



3 The children are .....



5 The children are .....



2 She's .....



4 They're .....



6 The girl is .....

## 39.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 I have to *make* my homework. I have to do my homework.
- 2 Can I *make* a photo of you?
- 3 He's 25 but he never *makes* his own washing. He takes his dirty clothes to his mother's.
- 4 Are you *making* an exam tomorrow?
- 5 Have you *made* your homework yet?

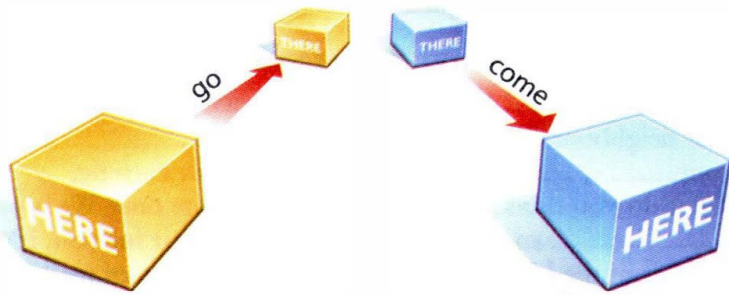
### Follow-up

مرجع زبان ایران

Make a page for expressions with *make* and *do* in your vocabulary notebook. Make two columns – one with the heading *make* and the other with the heading *do*. Write down all the *make* and *do* expressions you know in the appropriate columns. Add new expressions to the page as you meet them.

# 40 Come / came / come

Come and go are different:



## A Come in / out

We say 'Come in!' when someone knocks at the door of a room. Then the person who knocked comes into the room.



Come out (of) is often the opposite of come in (to).

A woman came out of the shop with two big bags. (I was in the street.)

You put your money in and the ticket comes out of the machine.



## B Come back and come home

Come back means 'return to this place here'.

She went away for three days. She came back yesterday. (She is here again.)

Come back is often used with from.

They came back from Italy yesterday.

Come home is similar; 'home' is 'here' for the person speaking.

MUM: What time did you come home last night?

ANNE: Oh, about 3 o'clock.

MUM: What! That's much too late!



## C Other important uses of come

A: What country do you come from?

B: I'm from Poland. / I come from Poland. / I'm Polish.

We're going clubbing tonight. Do you want to come along? [come with us]

Come and see me some time. [visit me]

### Error warning

I come from Poland [NOT I'm coming from Poland].

www.irLanguage.com

### Tip

Write down any prepositions you find with *come* every time you see them.

# Exercises

## 40.1 Fill the gaps in the sentences.

- 1 I put money in, but the ticket didn't come *out of* ..... the machine.
- 2 A: I'm going to Thailand tomorrow.  
B: Oh! When are you coming ..... ?  
A: In two weeks.
- 3 The teacher came ..... the classroom and started the lesson.
- 4 A: Where do you come ..... ?  
B: I'm Spanish.
- 5 Come and ..... me at 5 o'clock; we can talk about it then.
- 6 The children come ..... school at 4 o'clock.

## 40.2 What do you think these people are saying? Use words from the box.

come from   ~~come in~~   come along   come here



1 *Come in!* .....



3 .....



2 .....



4 .....

## 40.3 Fill the gaps using *come in* in the correct form.

- 1 Did you *come* ..... for your letters? They're on the table.
- 2 She ..... back yesterday.
- 3 He ..... here every Tuesday.
- 4 ..... you ..... to the party tonight?
- 5 Daljit ..... from a small town in India.

## 40.4 Answer these questions for yourself.

- 1 What time do you come home every day?
- 2 What country do you come from?
- 3 What do you do when you come into your classroom?

### Follow-up

Look up these verbs in a dictionary. Write down the meaning and one example for each verb. After a week, cover the verbs and examples, look at the meanings and see if you can remember the verbs.

Verb	Meaning	Example
come round	.....	.....
come across	.....	.....
come up	.....	.....

# 41 Take / took / taken

## A Take with time (it + take + person + time)

It takes Alan 20 minutes to get to work.

Alan's house → 20 minutes → Alan's office

It takes Miriam 45 minutes to get to work.

Miriam's flat → 45 minutes → Miriam's office

I go to school / university every day. It takes me 30 minutes.

I do homework every day. It took /tuk/ me two hours yesterday.

How long does it take to get to the station? Fifteen minutes in a taxi.

How long did it take you to learn the Greek alphabet? A week or two.

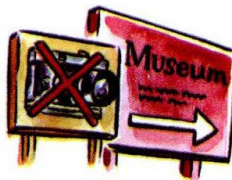


## B Take something with you

Are you going out? Take an umbrella. It's raining.

Are you going to the beach? Take some water with you.

Sorry, you can't take your camera into the museum.



## C Expressions

Can I take a photo / photograph here? /'fəʊtəʊ/ /'fəʊtəgræf/

A: Are you taking an English course? B: Yes.

A: Do you have to take an exam? B: Yes, at the end of the course.

I want to take some Japanese lessons.

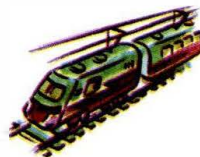
How do you get to work? I take the bus.

In London you can take the underground to the London Eye.



We took a taxi from the airport to our hotel.

How does Nick get to work? He takes the train.



### Tip

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

www.irLanguage.com

Make a page in your notebook for *take* and put in new words that go with it when you see them (e.g. *take a picture, take a look at, take a chance*).



# Exercises

## 41.1 Fill the gaps for yourself.

- 1 It *takes* ..... me ..... minutes to get to school / university / work.
- 2 It takes me ..... minutes to go from my house to the nearest railway station.
- 3 It takes me ..... minutes to get to my best friend's house.
- 4 ..... takes me ..... to do one unit of this book.

## 41.2 Complete the sentences using *take* and an expression from the box.

a course    some water    the train    ~~an exam~~

- 1 At the end of the course, you have to ..... *take an exam.* .....
- 2 You can fly from London to Paris or you can .....
- 3 You want to learn Russian? Why don't you .....
- 4 If you go out on a hot day, you need to .....

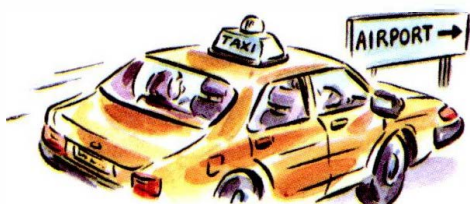
## 41.3 Look at the pictures. Answer the questions using *take*.



- 1 How does Lisa go to work?  
*She takes the train.* .....



- 3 How does Simon go to school?  
He .....



- 2 How can I get to the airport?  
You .....



- 4 How do Paulo and Anna get home every day?  
They .....

## 41.4 What do you take with you when ...

- 1 you want to take photographs? I *take my camera.*
- 2 it's raining?
- 3 you go to another country?
- 4 you go to your English lessons?
- 5 you need to text someone?



## 41.5 How long did it take you to do this unit?

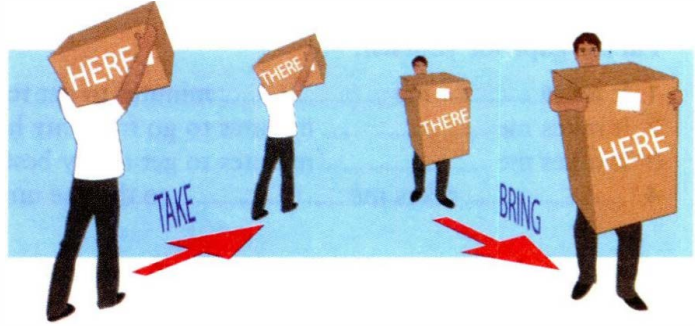


# Bring / brought / brought

## A Bring and take

take (like go) = from *here* to *there*

bring (like come) = from *there* to *here*



Are you going to school? Take your books. (= from *here* to the school)

Are you going to the kitchen? Can you bring me a glass? (= from the kitchen to *here*)

Please take this form to the secretary. (= the secretary is *there*)



Come to my house tomorrow and bring your guitar. (= for me, my house is *here*)



## B Bring somebody something



A: I've brought /brɔ:t/ you some apples from my garden. B: Oh, thank you!



When she visits me, she always brings me flowers.

## C Bring something back

It's raining. You can take my umbrella and bring it back tomorrow.

TOM: This book is interesting.

ANN: Please take it with you and read it.

TOM: Thanks. I'll bring it back on Friday.

ANN: OK. No problem.

# Exercises

## 42.1 Fill the gaps with *bring* or *take*.

- 1 Are you going to the shops? *Take* ..... an umbrella. It's raining.
- 2 'Don't forget to ..... your books tomorrow!' the teacher said to the class.
- 3 Are you going to the kitchen? Can you ..... me some water?
- 4 ..... your camera with you when you go to Thailand. It's beautiful there.
- 5 Are you going to the office? Can you ..... these papers, please?
- 6 I'll ..... you a present from New York.

## 42.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 Yesterday he brought me        | a these letters, please.         |
| 2 You must take                  | b bring your guitar.             |
| 3 Come to my house and           | c some flowers.                  |
| 4 Go to the post office and take | d food to the party.             |
| 5 Everybody is going to bring    | e your passport when you travel. |

## 42.3 Fill the gaps with the correct form of *bring* or *take*.

- 1 She always *brings* ..... me presents. Yesterday she ..... me some chocolates.
- 2 Hello, I've ..... you some flowers. I hope you like them!
- 3 Can you ..... this present when you go and see Sonia?
- 4 She is going to ..... my book, read it tonight and ..... it back tomorrow.

## 42.4 Fill the gaps with *bring back* or *take*.

- 1 Can I *take* ..... this magazine to read tonight? I'll ..... it ..... tomorrow.
- 2 When she went to Belgium, she ..... me ..... some chocolates.
- 3 Please ..... my umbrella. You can ..... it ..... tomorrow.

## 42.5 Where are you now?

If you are at an English lesson now, answer a).  
 If you are not at an English lesson, answer b).

- a Name three things you always bring to the lesson.
- b Name three things you always take to the lesson.



# 43 Get / got / got

## A Get with adjectives: for changes



It's light.



It's getting dark.



It's dark.



She's ill.



She's getting better.



She's better. / She's well.

I'm getting tired. I want to go to bed.



It's raining! I'm getting wet!



## B Get with nouns

If you **don't** have something you can get it. [get = buy or find]

I want to send a postcard. I have to get a stamp.

I'm going to the shop to get a newspaper.

Do you want a drink? I can get some coffee.

Where can I get a taxi?

I've finished my studies. Now I want to get a job.

My friend is ill! Please get a doctor.



## C Expressions

Maria and David are **getting married** in April.

A: When you **get to** New York, call me. [arrive at, reach] B: OK, give me your number.

A: How can I **get to** the airport? B: Take the airport bus at the bus station.

I'll see you when you **get back** from Hong Kong. [return, come home]

(See also get up in Unit 45.)

### Error warning

When I get home, I have my lunch [NOT When I get to home].

I get there at 6 o'clock, so please ring me at 6.30 [NOT I get to there].

# Exercises

## 43.1 Complete these sentences using a, b or c.

- 1 I studied too much and I got a) hot b) tired c) sick.
- 2 I ate too much and I got a) hot b) tired c) sick.
- 3 I sat in the sun too much and I got a) hot b) tired c) sick.
- 4 In winter in the north it gets a) tired b) dark c) wet very early.
- 5 Ahmed got very a) dark b) better c) wet in the rain.

## 43.2 Complete these sentences using the correct form of *get* and a word from the box.

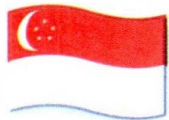
better light ~~dark~~ cold wet

- 1 The sun is going down. It's getting dark.
- 2 When the sun comes up it .....
- 3 She's in hospital but she .....
- 4 It's raining! I .....
- 5 Please close the window. I .....

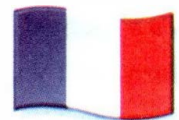
## 43.3 What / Who do you get if ...

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1 you want to post a letter? a stamp | 5 you want to read the news?           |
| 2 somebody is ill?                   | 6 you want to go to the airport?       |
| 3 you are thirsty?                   | 7 you want to earn some money?         |
| 4 you want to write something down?  | 8 you want to go out and it's raining? |

## 43.4 Complete these sentences.



Singapore (dep. 05.45)

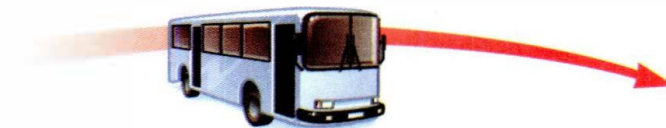


Paris (arr. 12.30)

- 1 This plane gets to Paris at 12.30.



university

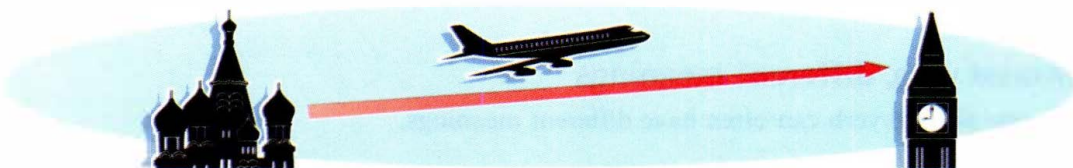


(25 minutes)



my house

- 2 The bus from the university ..... my house in 25 minutes.



- 3 When does the flight from Moscow ..... London?
- 4 José usually leaves work at 6 and ..... home at 6.30.
- 5 Mike is in New York. He won't ..... till the 14th July.

## 43.5 Answer the questions. Write sentences.

- 1 In your country, how old are people usually when they get married?
- 2 When do people usually get married? Which day? Which month(s)?
- 3 What time do you usually get home every day? How do you get there?

# 44 Phrasal verbs

## A What are phrasal verbs?

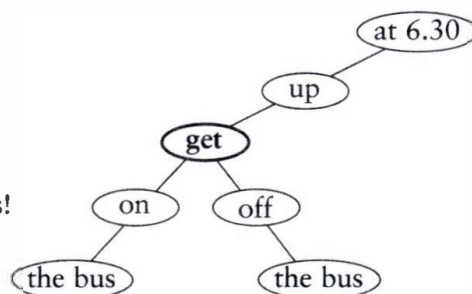
Phrasal verbs have two parts: a verb + a particle.

get up / on / off

I got up at 6.30 this morning. I'm tired now.

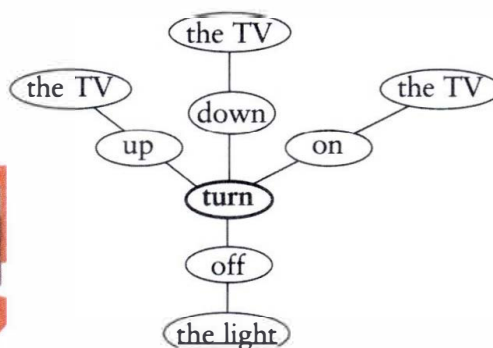
We should get on the bus. It's leaving in five minutes!

We got off the bus at the City Museum.



turn on / off / up / down

He always turns on the TV at 9 o'clock to watch the news.



It's a sunny day. Turn the light off.

Turn the TV up. I can't hear it.

Turn the TV down. It's too loud.

go on / off

Don't stop. Go on talking. It's very interesting. [continue]

Karen went off and forgot her handbag. [left]

put something on

It's cold and windy outside. Put your coat on. / Put on your coat.

come on

Come on! We're late.

## B One phrasal verb, different meanings

Note that one phrasal verb can often have different meanings.

turn down

She turned down the stereo. [made it not so loud]

She turned down the invitation. [refused it]

take off

Our plane takes off at 12.30. [leaves the ground]

She took off her shoes. [removed them from her feet]

### Tip

Make a special page in your notebook. Write down any phrasal verbs you see or hear. Organise them into groups, in any way that makes sense to you, for example, clothes, movement.

# Exercises

## 44.1 Match a sentence on the left with a sentence on the right.

- |                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 It's eight o'clock.              | a I'm going to turn it down.   |
| 2 We arrived at our station.       | b Please turn your music down. |
| 3 That funny programme is on soon. | c It's time to get up.         |
| 4 The bus arrived.                 | d We got off the train.        |
| 5 I'm trying to work.              | e Put on your raincoat.        |
| 6 I can't hear the news.           | f We got on.                   |
| 7 It's raining today.              | g Turn on the TV.              |
| 8 I don't want to accept that job. | h Turn the radio up.           |

## 44.2 Put the correct prepositions in these sentences.

- It's dark in here. Turn on..... the lights.
- Our plane takes ..... at 6.25 and lands at 7.50.
- Come ..... ! It's time to get ..... . You'll be late for school!
- The children took ..... their school uniforms when they got home.
- It's time to turn ..... the TV and go to bed now.
- Get ..... the bus at the train station, then walk about 100 metres and you'll see the theatre.
- The students went ..... working until late at night.
- When they got to the beach, he put ..... his swimming trunks and ran down to the sea.

## 44.3 What is happening in these pictures? Use one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page to describe each picture.



1 They are getting on the coach. .....



3 .....



2 .....



4 ..... oven.

## 44.4 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

- The plane left at midnight. The plane took off at midnight.
- I removed my hat and coat.
- She continued writing novels all her life.
- Michael left without saying goodbye to anybody.
- I refused the invitation to Maya's wedding.

# 45 Everyday things

## A Things we do every day



I wake up



get up



go to the bathroom



have a shower



have breakfast  
/'brekfəst/



listen to the radio  
/'lɪsən/



go to work



come home



make dinner



phone (or call)  
a friend



watch TV



go to bed

## B Sometimes I ...



wash clothes



clean the house



go for a walk



write letters / emails

## C Expressions

A: How often do you read the newspaper / watch TV?

B: Three or four times a week.

A: What time do you get up / go to work?

B: At 7 o'clock normally.

A: How do you go to work?

B: Usually by bus / train / car.

### Error warning

We say I usually get up at 8 o'clock, but today I got up at 8.30. [NOT I used to / I'm used to get up at 8 o'clock.]

(See also Unit 36: Have / had / had and Unit 39: Make / made / made.)



# Exercises

## 45.1 What do they usually do?

1 He listens to the radio every morning...



2 She w..... (every Saturday)



3 He c..... (every weekend)



4 He w..... (every evening)



5 She g..... (every Sunday)

## 45.2 Ask questions.

topic	question	answer
1 get up	What time do you get up?	7.30, usually.
2 go for a walk	How ...	Every Saturday.
3 go to work	How ...	By train.
4 have dinner	When ...	At about 7 o'clock usually.
5 come home from work	How ...	I normally walk home.
6 phone your best friend	How ...	Two or three times a week.
7 clean your room	When ...	On Saturday morning usually.
8 have a shower	What ...	Usually at about 11 pm.

## 45.3 Complete the sentences about yourself.

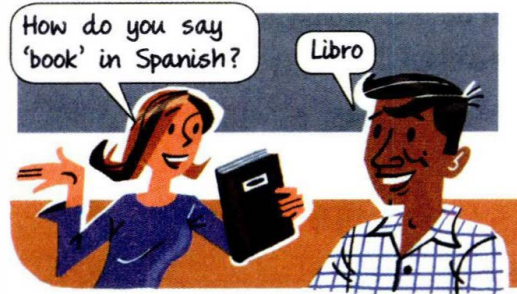
- I usually wake up at .....
- I go to the bathroom and have .....
- I usually have ..... for breakfast.
- I go to work by .....
- I usually have a cup of tea / coffee at ..... o'clock.
- I usually come home at .....
- I usually ..... dinner at ..... o'clock.
- In the evenings I normally ..... or .....
- Sometimes I ..... a letter or email or ..... to the radio.
- I usually ..... to bed at .....

# 46 Talking

## A Say (say / said / said)

We use say when we report someone's words.  
She said, 'This is horrible!'  
He said that he wanted a drink.

We say hello / goodbye and we say please / thank you / Happy Birthday / Merry Christmas / Happy New Year / Congratulations!  
*/kəŋgrætʃə'leɪfɪnz/*



We use say when we ask about language.

## B Tell (tell / told / told)

Tell is usually followed immediately by a person.  
Say is not followed immediately by a person.  
Tell is often used with *how* and *wh*-words (when, what, why, where) to find out and give information.  
Tell me when you want to have dinner. She told me how to send a text message.  
You can tell someone the time / a story / a joke / your name / address / phone number.

### Error warning

He told me his name. [NOT He said me his name.]

### Error warning

Can you tell me where the bus station is, please? [NOT Can you say me ... ?]

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

## C Ask

Ask is used for questions.  
My sister asked me where I was going. / My sister asked (me), 'Where are you going?'  
A: Can I ask you a question?  
B: Yes.  
A: What day of the week were you born?  
B: Thursday.  
You can ask someone the way / the time.  
You can ask somebody to do something and ask someone for something.  
I asked him to turn off his radio. (or I said, 'Please turn off your radio.')She asked for the bill. (or She said, 'Can I have the bill, please?')



## D Speak / talk / answer / reply

I like talking to you. [having a conversation with you]

### Error warning

Do you speak Japanese? (used for languages) [NOT Do you talk Japanese?]

Can you answer the telephone / the door, please? [pick up the phone / open the door to see who it is]  
Teacher: Who can answer the next question? Joanna?  
He didn't reply to my email. (also used for letters / faxes / texts) [he did not send me an email back]



# Exercises

## 46.1 Fill the gaps with the correct form of *say* or *tell*.

- 1 Can you tell..... me where the Plaza Hotel is, please?
- 2 She ..... me her name.
- 3 I ..... goodbye to her.
- 4 'Please ..... me a story,' the little boy .....
- 5 'Come here!' the police officer .....
- 6 The teacher ..... her students that they were very good.

## 46.2 What do you say?

- 1 You want to know if an English friend can help you talk to a Russian person who does not know English.  
Can you speak Russian? .....
- 2 You want to know the word for 'tree' in German.  
How .....
- 3 You want to know the time.  
Excuse me, can you .....
- 4 Your course is finished. You want to say goodbye to your teacher.  
I just want to .....
- 5 You want to know when the exam is.  
Can you .....
- 6 The telephone rings. You are busy cooking food. A friend is watching you.  
(to your friend)  
Can you .....



## 46.3 Match the verbs on the left with the words on the right.

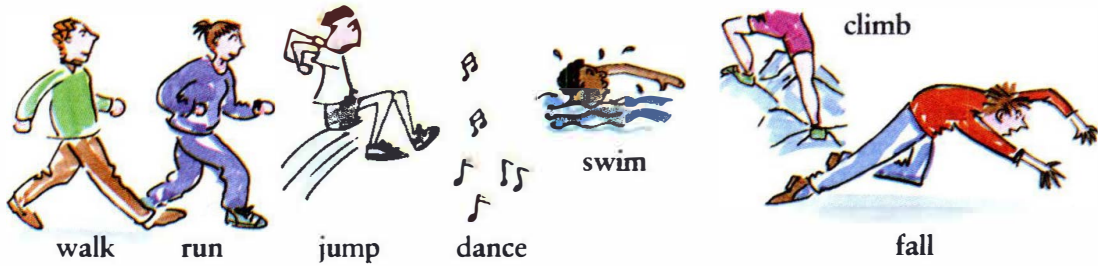
- |            |                       |
|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 say      | a a letter            |
| 2 answer   | b someone to help you |
| 3 ask for  | c Japanese            |
| 4 reply to | d Happy New Year      |
| 5 tell     | e a friend            |
| 6 talk to  | f someone a joke      |
| 7 ask      | g the bill            |
| 8 speak    | h the door            |

## 46.4 Complete the phrases.

- 1 (on December 24th or 25th) Happy..... Christmas!
- 2 (you want to pay in a restaurant) Can we have ....., please?
- 3 (on the first day of the year) ..... Year!
- 4 (small child to parent) ..... a story before I go to sleep. Please!

# 47 Moving

## A Without transport



When talking about the past, we say: walked / ran / jumped / danced / swam / climbed / fell.

## B Transport

verb	transport	example
go by	car / plane / bus / train / bike / motorbike / ship / taxi / underground [NOT by a car]	We went to Paris by train last summer.
take	a / the bus / train / plane / a taxi / the underground	I took a taxi home yesterday.
ride	a bicycle / bike / motorbike / horse	I always rode my bike to school.
drive	a car / bus / train	My uncle drove a bus for ten years.

The pilot flies a plane.



How did you get to Istanbul? We flew there.



### Error warning

You arrive at or in a place [NOT arrive to a place]. The train arrived in Tokyo on time. The plane arrived late at Heathrow.

## C Expressions



### Tip

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

www.irLanguage.com

When you are travelling you will probably see a lot of signs and information in English. Make a note of any new words and expressions you see.

(See Unit 30: Travelling.)

# Exercises

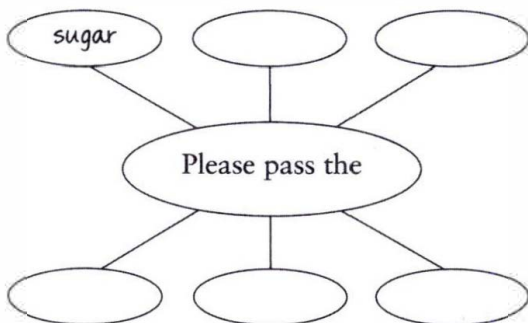
**47.1** Complete the sentences using verbs from A opposite. Write them in the correct form.

- 1 Jack likes running..... round the park every morning but Silvia prefers walking..... round it with her dog.
- 2 Everyone ..... at the party last night.
- 3 Every day Jane ..... ten lengths of the pool before breakfast.
- 4 James can ..... very fast. He has won a lot of races.
- 5 Robert loves ..... mountains.
- 6 The old lady ..... on her way home and broke her arm.
- 7 Sandra ..... into the swimming pool and quickly ..... to the other side.
- 8 It is better for you to ..... to work than to go by car.

**47.2** *Ride, drive, go by or take?* Write the correct word(s) in the sentence.

- 1 Can you ride..... a motorbike?
- 2 He works for a railway company. He ..... a train.
- 3 She sometimes ..... the underground to work.
- 4 He goes away from home a lot. He ..... a lorry.
- 5 I prefer to ..... a bus than ..... car.
- 6 Would you like to ..... an elephant?
- 7 You never forget how to ..... a bicycle.
- 8 I usually ..... a taxi when it rains.

**47.3** Complete the diagram with six possible words.



**47.4** Put these sentences into the past tense with the word *yesterday*.

- 1 Laura runs a mile every day. *She ran a mile yesterday.*
- 2 Maria often drives her grandmother to the city.
- 3 Bill flies to Madrid every week.
- 4 I sometimes take a taxi home from the station.
- 5 Jane often falls when she rides her bike.
- 6 Paul often misses the 7.30 bus to school.
- 7 The taxi driver usually helps the old lady to carry her luggage to the train.
- 8 Susie usually dances very well.

**47.5** Answer these questions. Use *every day, once a week, once a year* or *never*.

- 1 How often do you walk to work or school? *I walk to work every day.*
- 2 Have you got a bike? How often do you ride it?
- 3 How often do you go swimming? Do you swim in the sea or in a pool?
- 4 How often do you go somewhere by plane?
- 5 How often do you drive a car?
- 6 How often do you go dancing?
- 7 Do you often go climbing?
- 8 How often do you take a taxi?

# 48 Talking about language

## Language words

This book uses some grammar words in English.

grammar word	meaning	example	in your language
noun	a person or thing	book, girl, pen	
pronoun	used instead of a noun	I, he, she, we, it, mine, yours	
verb	something we do	do, read, write	
adjective	describes a person or thing	good, bad, happy, long	
adverb	describes a verb	slowly, badly	
preposition	a little word used before a noun or pronoun	in, on, by, at	
conjunction	connects one part of a sentence to another	and, because, if, so, after, when	
singular	just one	book, house	
plural	more than one	books, houses	
phrase	a group of words (not a complete sentence)	in a house, at home, an old man	
sentence	a complete idea in writing, beginning with a capital letter and ending with a full stop	The man went into the room and closed the door.	
paragraph	a short part of a text (one or more sentences) beginning on a new line	This book has 60 units. Each unit has two pages.	
dialogue	a conversation between two people	Ann: How's Jo? Bill: OK, thanks.	
question	a set of words that begin with a capital letter and end with a question mark	Are you English? Do you like school?	
answer	a reply to a question	Yes, I am. No, I don't.	

### Tip

When you learn a new word, make a note of the type of word it is in your notebook.  
e.g. happy - adjective, in - preposition

# Exercises

**48.1** Write the grammar words opposite in your own language.

**48.2** Write these words in the correct column.

book speak good word house have write new man right blue say

noun	verb	adjective
book		

**48.3** Add three more examples of prepositions.

in.....

**48.4** Are the following phrases, sentences or questions?

- 1 in the park phrase
- 2 Do you speak English?
- 3 a black cat
- 4 She's writing a book.
- 5 What's your name?
- 6 I like English.

**48.5** Answer these questions.

- 1 What is the plural of book? books
- 2 What is the singular of men?
- 3 Is from a verb?
- 4 Is cat an adjective?
- 5 Is this a phrase? 'Jane loves Harry.'
- 6 Is bad an adverb?
- 7 What type of word are we and it?
- 8 Which of these words is a conjunction: good, us, because?

**48.6** In this text, find four nouns, one adjective, one adverb, one preposition, and one pronoun.

The cat plays happily in the garden all day. She loves fresh milk.



Nouns: cat.....

Adjective: .....

Adverb: .....

Preposition: .....

Pronoun: .....

# 49 Conjunctions and connecting words

## A Basic conjunctions

Conjunctions join two parts of a sentence. They help to show the connection between the two parts of the sentence.

conjunction	example	use
and	Kate is a student <b>and</b> she works part-time.	We use <i>and</i> to give extra information in the second part of the sentence.
but	They are rich <b>but</b> they aren't happy.	We use <i>but</i> when the second part of the sentence contrasts with the first part.
or	You can pay by credit card <b>or</b> cash.	We use <i>or</i> when the second part of the sentence gives a different possibility.
because	We went home early <b>because</b> we were tired.	We use <i>because</i> when the second part of the sentence explains why the first part happened.
so	I felt ill <b>so</b> I didn't go to work.	We use <i>so</i> when the second part of the sentence gives a result of the first part.
when	I went to the party <b>when</b> the babysitter arrived.	We use <i>when</i> to say when the first part of the sentence happened.
before	We left <b>before</b> it started to rain.	We use <i>before</i> to show that the first part of the sentence happened first.
after	We went for a meal <b>after</b> we had seen the film.	We use <i>after</i> to show that the second part of the sentence happened first.
if	You can have some ice cream <b>if</b> you eat your dinner.	We use <i>if</i> to say that the first part of the sentence will only happen after the second part of the sentence happens and it may not happen.

## B Other connecting words

These words are useful for making connections between words and phrases.

word	example	use
only	He <b>only</b> sleeps for three hours every night.	We use <i>only</i> to say something is not very big or very much.
like	She looks <b>like</b> her father.	We use <i>like</i> to make a comparison.
than	She works harder <b>than</b> he does.	We use <i>than</i> after a comparative adjective or adverb.
also too as well	He works in the shop and she does <b>also / too / as well</b> .	We use <i>also</i> , <i>too</i> and <i>as well</i> to say something is extra.

### Tip

These words are small, but they are very important to learn. Write a translation of the words in the first column of the tables.



# Exercises

**49.1** Choose one of the words to complete each sentence.

- 1 Sam liked school because / but / if he had many friends there.
- 2 Sam left school so / or / and he joined the navy.
- 3 He hadn't travelled much but / before / after he joined the navy.
- 4 Sam was seasick when / if / so he left the navy.
- 5 He took a job in a bank because / after / or it was near his home.
- 6 He will stay at the bank when / if / before he likes it there.
- 7 If he doesn't like his new job, he'll go to university before / if / or he'll move to London.
- 8 He wants to get married if / when / so he's 25.

**49.2** Write down nine sentences from the columns. Use each of the conjunctions once.



Mary agreed to marry Sanjay after they decided to set up a business together.

Mary agreed to marry Sanjay

Mary will marry Sanjay

after  
and  
because  
before  
but  
if  
or  
so  
when

she loves him.  
she loved him.  
she doesn't love him.  
they had two sons.  
he moves to London.  
he moved to London.  
she won't marry anyone.  
he was a pop star.  
they decided to set up a business together.

**49.3** Fill in the gaps with words from B opposite.



I love swimming, my brother loves swimming <sup>1</sup> too ..... and my sister likes it very much <sup>2</sup> ..... I can swim better <sup>3</sup> ..... they can! Almost all my family loves swimming. My grandmother swims <sup>4</sup> ..... a fish but she doesn't swim very often – <sup>5</sup> ..... every year or so, now.

**49.4** Write six sentences about your family and your habits using *only*, *than*, *like*, *also*, *too* and *as well*.

I play tennis and my mother plays as well. My mother plays better than I do.

**49.5** Complete these sentences about yourself.

- 1 I'm learning English because .....
- 2 I'll learn more English if .....
- 3 I'm learning English and .....
- 4 I started learning English when .....
- 5 I can speak some English, so .....
- 6 I'll learn more English but .....

# 50 Days, months, seasons

## A Time

There are:

365 days in a year (a year which has 366 days is a leap year)

12 months /mʌnθs/ in a year

7 days in a week

2 weeks in a fortnight

24 hours in a day

60 minutes in an hour (we say an hour /'aʊə/)

60 seconds in a minute

100 years in a century

## B Days of the week

Sunday /'sʌndeɪ/, Monday /'mʌndeɪ/, Tuesday, Wednesday /'wenzdeɪ/, Thursday, Friday, Saturday

The names of the days always begin with a capital letter in English.

Saturday + Sunday = the weekend



Monday (before 12 am) = Monday morning

Monday (between 12 am and 6 pm) = Monday afternoon

Monday (after 6 pm) = Monday evening

We say on + days of the week: on Monday, on Saturday, etc. I saw her on Friday / on Tuesday evening.

### Error warning

We say at + the weekend: I went to the cinema at the weekend [NOT in the weekend].

## C Months and seasons

Months: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December

The names of the months always begin with a capital letter in English.

Some countries have four seasons: spring, summer, autumn /'ɔ:təm/ and winter.



The names of the seasons do not usually begin with a capital letter in English.

We say in + months / seasons: in July, in December, in (the) spring, in (the) summer, etc.

Birds sing in (the) spring.

### Error warning

My birthday is in July [NOT on July].

### Tip

Write the day and date in English every time you do an English exercise, e.g. Thursday 9th December 2010.

# Exercises

## 50.1 Answer these questions.

- 1 24 hours = *one day* .....
- 2 100 years = .....
- 3 2 weeks = .....
- 4 60 minutes = .....
- 5 7 days = .....

## 50.2 Complete this British children's song about the number of days in each month.

Thirty days has *September* .....,  
A....., J..... and N.....  
All the rest have .....,  
Except for F.....,  
Which has twenty-eight days  
And ..... in each leap year.

## 50.3 These abbreviations are often used for the days of the week and the months. Write the names out in full.

- |                           |             |               |
|---------------------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1 Mon <i>Monday</i> ..... | 5 Wed ..... | 9 Feb .....   |
| 2 Aug .....               | 6 Jan ..... | 10 Sept ..... |
| 3 Oct .....               | 7 Apr ..... | 11 Tues ..... |
| 4 Sat .....               | 8 Fri ..... | 12 Nov .....  |

## 50.4 What are the next letters in each of these? Why?

- 1 S S A W (the first letters of the four seasons: spring, summer, autumn, winter)
- 2 S M T W ..... .....
- 3 J F M A M J J ..... .....

## 50.5 Correct the six mistakes in this paragraph.

I'm going to a party on <sup>S</sup>@aturday for Jill's birthday. Her birthday is on thursday but she wanted to have the party in the weekend. She's having a barbecue. I think june is a good month to have a birthday because of the weather. I love going to barbecues on the summer. My birthday is in Winter and it's too cold to eat outside!

## 50.6 How quickly can you answer these quiz questions?

- 1 How many minutes are there in a quarter of an hour?
- 2 What is the third day of the week?
- 3 How many seconds are there in five minutes?
- 4 What is the seventh month?
- 5 How many months are there in ten years?
- 6 What month is your birthday in?
- 7 What day is it today?
- 8 What day will it be tomorrow?
- 9 What day will it be the day after tomorrow?
- 10 What day was it yesterday?
- 11 What day was it the day before yesterday?
- 12 What month is it?

# 51 Time words

## A Time in relation to now

Now means at this moment. Then means at another moment (usually in the past).

I was born in Edinburgh. Then we moved to London. Now I live in Cambridge.



It is 10 o'clock now.

I got up four hours ago, at 6 o'clock.

An hour ago it was 9 o'clock.

two years            for two years  
2008–2010        from 2008 to 2010

2008 —————> 2010

last year / last week / last Saturday  
next year / next week / next summer

It is July now.

Last month it was June.

Next month it will be August.

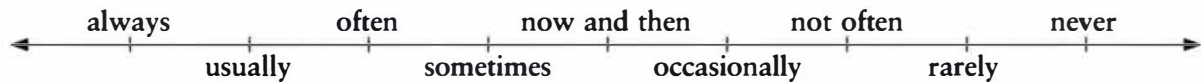


When we talk about time in general, we talk about the past, the present and the future.

In the past people didn't have television.

People may travel to Mars in the future.

## B Frequency adverbs



It always snows in Russia in winter.

It often rains in the UK.

The Ancient Romans never went to America or Australia.

## C Expressions

Notice the use of a in these expressions of frequency.

once [one time] a week: I go swimming once a week, every Saturday

twice [two times] a day: I clean my teeth twice a day.

three times a year: I see my uncle three times a year.

four times a month: I play football four or five times a month.

I'll be with you in a moment. [a very short time]

Jane's in Paris at the moment. [now]

See you soon! [in a short time]

We met recently. [not long ago]

# Exercises

**51.1** Fill the gaps with a preposition from the opposite page.

<sup>1</sup>In..... the past, Rosa worked in many different countries. Rosa worked in Hong Kong <sup>2</sup>..... three years, <sup>3</sup>..... 1993 <sup>4</sup>..... 1996. <sup>5</sup>..... the moment she is working in Tokyo. She will stay there <sup>6</sup>..... two more years.

**51.2** Draw lines to match the centuries to their time.

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| 1 the 19th century | — the past<br>the present<br>the future |
| 2 the 22nd century |   |
| 3 the 18th century |   |
| 4 the 21st century |   |
| 5 the 20th century |   |

**51.3** Are these sentences true about you? If not, write them out correctly. Use other frequency adverbs from B opposite.

- 1 I always go swimming on Fridays. I sometimes go swimming on Fridays.
- 2 I usually go to school / work by bus.
- 3 I occasionally watch TV.
- 4 I rarely drink milk.
- 5 I often wear a hat.
- 6 I rarely eat chocolate.
- 7 I always go to bed at 10.
- 8 I never go to the theatre.

**51.4** Read the sentences and answer the questions.

- 1 Peter will get his exam results very soon.  
Do you think Peter will get them next year, next month or tomorrow? Probably tomorrow
- 2 Harriet and Rupert met for the first time recently.  
Do you think they first met last year, six months ago or a week ago?
- 3 I'll help you in a moment.  
Do you think I'll help you next week, in two hours or in a few minutes?
- 4 It's 6 o'clock now.  
Two hours ago it started to snow. What time was it then?

**51.5** Look at the table and write sentences using expressions like *once a week*, *three times a month*, etc.

John plays tennis twice a week.

	play tennis		practise the piano	have a business meeting in Germany
John	Mondays and Thursdays		Saturdays	the first Friday every month
Bettina and Amy	Tuesdays, Fridays and Saturdays		every morning and every evening	once in January, March, May, July, August and December every year

# 52 Places

## A General place words

Come here, please. [to me, to where I am]

Have you been to Lima? I'm going there in April. [not here, another place]

Jim is coming back from Portugal in May. [to here again, to this place]

There are books and papers everywhere in my room. [in all parts / all places]

(See Unit 40: Come / came / come.)

## B Prepositions

Luke is in the kitchen, making dinner.

There are two restaurants in the village.

Martha lives in Seoul / South Korea / Asia.

I'll meet you at the station.

I always sit at the front of the class.

I like that photo on the wall.

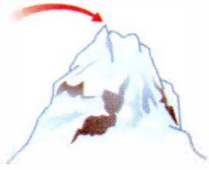
Don't put your books on the chair. I want to sit on it!

in

● at

on

## C Positions



the top of the mountain



the middle of the road



the bottom of the glass



the front of the car



the side of the car



the back of the car

the beginning of the motorway

the end of the motorway



## D Left and right

This is his left hand. This is his right hand.

In York Street, there is a cinema on the left and a restaurant on the right.



## E Home and away

Is Mary at home? [in her house / flat]

No, sorry, she's out. [not here for a short time, e.g. at the shops or at work]

No, sorry, she's away. [not here for a longer time, e.g. on holiday]

No, sorry, she's abroad. [in another country]

# Exercises

## 52.1 Fill the gaps with *here, there, back* or *everywhere*.

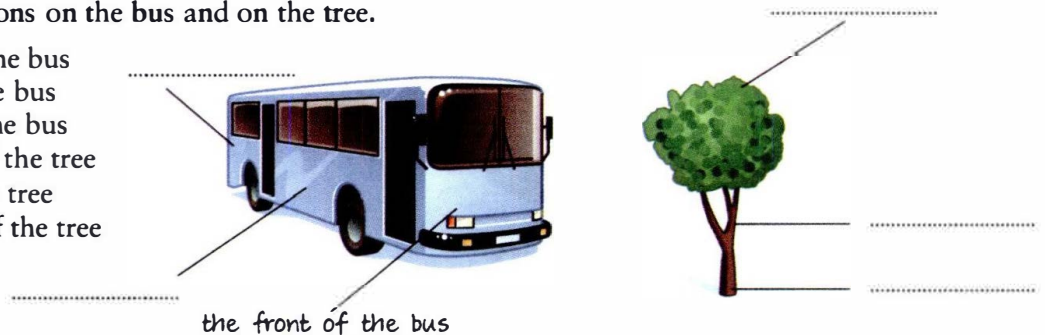
- 1 Thanks for lending me your dictionary. I'll bring it *back* ..... soon. (See Unit 42: Bring / brought / brought.)
- 2 Come ..... Emma! Don't go near the road! (See Unit 40: Come / came / come.)
- 3 This letter is for a teacher at the university. Can you take it ..... (See Unit 41: Take / took / taken.)
- 4 I opened the washing machine too soon. Now there's water ..... !
- 5 I want to leave this letter in Nora's office. Are you going ..... ?
- 6 I'm going to Italy tomorrow, but I'm coming ..... on Friday.

## 52.2 Fill the gaps with the correct preposition.

- 1 My brother works *in* ..... Paris.
- 2 Why do you always sit ..... the back of the class?
- 3 Let's go and sit ..... the sofa.
- 4 What time do you arrive? I'll meet you ..... the bus station.
- 5 There was a picture of an old man ..... the wall.
- 6 Do you usually study ..... your bedroom or ..... the living room?

## 52.3 Mark the positions on the bus and on the tree.

- 1 the front of the bus
- 2 the side of the bus
- 3 the back of the bus
- 4 the middle of the tree
- 5 the top of the tree
- 6 the bottom of the tree



## 52.4 Fill the gaps with *out, away* or *abroad*.

- 1 I'd like to work *abroad* ..... and learn about a new country.
- 2 Is Lily here? No, she's ..... but she'll be back in about five minutes.
- 3 I'm going ..... tomorrow. I'm going to stay with my sister for a few days.
- 4 When we go ..... we like to go ..... and see new countries.

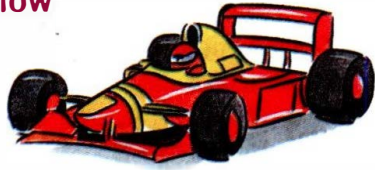
## 52.5 Answer these questions about yourself and about this book.

- 1 Are you studying English at home or abroad?
- 2 Are you going away this year?
- 3 What have you got in your left or right hand at the moment?
- 4 What is there at the end of this book?
- 5 Where is Unit 3 in this book? (beginning / middle / end?)
- 6 Where is Unit 36 in this book? (beginning / middle / end?)

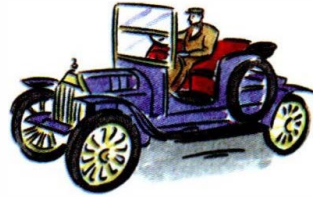
# 53 Manner

Adjectives and adverbs can describe manner, i.e. *how* we do something.

## A Fast and slow



adjectives This is a **fast** car.  
adverbs This car goes **very fast**.



This is a **slow** car.  
This car goes **very slowly**.

## B Loud /laud/ and quiet /'kwaɪət/



adjectives The music is **too loud**.  
adverbs The children sang **loudly**.



It's **very quiet** here.  
The teacher speaks **very quietly**.  
We can't hear him.

## C Good and bad



adjectives She's a **good** driver.  
adverbs She drives **well**.



He's a **bad** driver.  
He drives **badly**.

## D Right and wrong

This sentence is **right**. I like coffee **very much**. [✓]

This sentence is **wrong**. I like **very much** coffee. [✗]

## E Expressions with way



He's speaking in a **friendly way**.



She's speaking in an **unfriendly way**.

You're doing that the **wrong way**.  
Let me show you the **right way** to do it.





# Exercises

## 53.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 This train is slow. It goes very slowly .
- 2 He is a bad singer. He sings very .....
- 3 She is always loud. She speaks very .....
- 4 He's a fast swimmer. He swims very .....
- 5 This girl is quiet. She always speaks .....
- 6 He's a good English-speaker. He speaks English .....

## 53.2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Please don't play your radio so loudly ..... – I'm trying to study.
- 2 Let's take the ..... train, not the fast one.
- 3 Katie is very ..... at French but bad at German.
- 4 Why is Fiona behaving ..... an unfriendly way?
- 5 I hope this is the ..... answer.
- 6 It is better to do something well than to do it .....
- 7 The children are playing very ..... – they know that grandma is asleep.
- 8 Did I do this exercise ..... right way?

## 53.3 Are the definitions right or wrong? Use a dictionary.

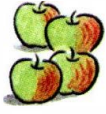
word	definition	right (✓)	wrong (x)
suddenly	very slowly		x
sadly	in an unhappy way		
strangely	not in a normal way		
quickly	very slowly		
easily	with no difficulty		

## 53.4 Complete these sentences about yourself and your friends or family.

- 1 My sister plays tennis ..... well.
- 2 My ..... badly.
- 3 I ..... fast.
- 4 My ..... slow.
- 5 My ..... quiet.
- 6 I ..... loudly.
- 7 My ..... in a friendly way.
- 8 I ..... the right way.

# 54 Common uncountable nouns

## A What are countable and uncountable nouns?



apples



shoes



plates

**COUNTABLE** You can count them: four apples, two shoes.



sugar



money



luggage

**UNCOUNTABLE** You can't count it. [NOT three luggages]

Can I have three apples and some sugar, please?

Are these shoes yours? Is this luggage yours?

## B Everyday uncountable nouns



This furniture is modern.



The traffic is bad today.



I'll give you some advice about your future.



He can give some useful information about Bangkok.



There is some bad news today.



It's terrible weather today.



Accommodation here is expensive.



I need some fresh air.



Studying is hard work.



Air travel is faster than rail travel.



## C Food

A lot of uncountable nouns are kinds of food and drink.



rice



spaghetti



butter



bread



milk



water



tea



coffee

*Note:* When we want to say how much we want, we say two loaves of bread, three litres of milk, a kilo of rice.

### Tip

When you learn a new noun, write it down in a phrase which shows if it is countable or uncountable.

# Exercises

## 54.1 Fill the gaps with an uncountable noun from the opposite page.

- I'd like to buy a car but I haven't got enough **money**..... .
- Cows give us ..... and .....
- If you don't know what to do, ask your parents for some .....
- The ..... at the seaside is very good for you.
- Rob left school last month and is now looking for .....
- There is always a lot of ..... in central London.

## 54.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |          |             |
|----------|-------------|
| 1 heavy  | information |
| 2 useful | travel      |
| 3 bad    | water       |
| 4 modern | luggage     |
| 5 brown  | news        |
| 6 cold   | furniture   |
| 7 space  | bread       |

## 54.3 Fill the gaps with the correct form of the verb *be*.

- Accommodation in the city centre **is**..... expensive.
- Spaghetti with Italian tomato sauce ..... very good.
- The weather in Scotland ..... best in the autumn.
- The news ..... better today than it ..... yesterday.
- Travel ..... the most important thing in Sam's life.
- Their furniture ..... very old and very beautiful.

## 54.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- The news ~~are~~ not very good today. **is**
- Where can I get some informations about your country?
- Let me give you an advice.
- Cook these spaghetti for ten minutes.
- Can I have a bread, please?
- We need to buy some new furnitures.
- The east of the country usually has a better weather than the west.
- I must find a new accommodation soon.

### Follow-up

Use a dictionary to check if these words are countable or uncountable and make a note of them in your vocabulary notebook:

equipment  
biscuit  
homework  
vehicle

# 55 Common adjectives 1: Good and bad things

## A Good adjectives



a good restaurant



an excellent restaurant

good \_\_\_\_\_ very good  
 nice lovely great wonderful excellent



A: That's a nice jacket.  
 B: Thank you.

It's a great film. We all loved it.



A: It's a lovely day today! /'lʌvli/  
 B: Yes, it is.

A: Do you want to go to London on Saturday?  
 B: That's an excellent idea! [very good]



a wonderful view  
 /'wʌndəfəl/

## B Bad adjectives



bad weather



My hair is awful!

The weather this summer was very bad.

Other words that mean very bad are dreadful, horrible, terrible:

The food in that café was horrible. Nobody liked it.

What's that dreadful smell?

I had a terrible day at work today.

The traffic's terrible at 5 o'clock on Fridays.

## C Expressions

A: The train arrives at 7 o'clock; dinner is at 8 o'clock.

B: Excellent! / Great! / Wonderful! / Lovely! / Perfect!

*Note:* We often say not bad when we are speaking.

A: I get \$500 a week in my job.

B: That's not bad! (= good!)

We use these adjectives with how:

A: I have to get up at 5.30 tomorrow.

B: Oh, how awful! / how horrible!

A: I've got a great new job in New York!

B: How nice! / How wonderful! / How lovely!

### Error warning

How awful! / How horrible!  
 [NOT How-bad!]

# Exercises

## 55.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 My hair's *awful*..... . I must go to the hairdresser's.
- 2 The weather's ..... . I don't want to go out.
- 3 The traffic is ..... in the city centre. Take the train.
- 4 That's a(n) ..... idea! Let's do it!
- 5 How ..... ! Three exams on the same day!
- 6 What a ..... house! The sea is only 100 metres away!
- 7 My timetable's not ..... . I'm free on Wednesdays and Fridays.
- 8 We have a ..... view of the mountains from our hotel room.

## 55.2 What can you say? Someone says to you ...

- 1 Do you like my new skirt? Yes, it's lovely!
- 2 I have to get up at 4.30 tomorrow morning.
- 3 Do you want to go out for dinner tonight?
- 4 (*in your town*) Excuse me. Is there a good restaurant in this town?
- 5 What do you think of your English lessons?
- 6 Is it OK if I come to your house at 6.30 tomorrow evening?

## 55.3 Match the words on the left with an expression from the right.

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 Blue sky, sun 25°                               | a Wonderful news     |
| 2 Five stars (*****)                              | b Awful weather      |
| 3 I don't want to walk. <b>Let's take a taxi.</b> | c Lovely weather     |
| 4 90 out of 100 in an exam                        | d A very good idea   |
| 5 ( <i>in summer</i> ) Grey sky, wind, rain, 4°   | e An excellent hotel |

## 55.4 Put these words into the good or bad column. Use a dictionary.

~~dreadful~~ brilliant marvellous nasty fine

good	bad
	<i>dreadful</i>

## 55.5 Now think of two nouns to go with each of the adjectives in 55.4.

Use a dictionary to help you.

- dreadful *weather / film*.....  
 brilliant .....  
 marvellous .....  
 nasty .....  
 fine .....

# Common adjectives 2: People

## A Saying positive / good things about people

Nice is the most common word used for people who we like / who are good.

Olga's very nice.

Richard's a nice man.

If we want to make nice stronger, we can use wonderful.

Ron is a wonderful teacher. All the students love him.

If someone is good to other people, we use kind.

She's very kind; she helps me with the children.

My teacher is a lovely man. (I like him very much)

My friend Neil is very easy-going. [relaxed, easy to be with]

Maureen's a happy person. (*opposite*: an unhappy person)

All my friends are more intelligent than me. [clever]

### Error warning

Mary is wonderful [NOT ~~Mary is very-wonderful~~].

## B Saying negative / bad things about people

Marcia is not very nice.

Horrible is a lot stronger than 'not very nice'.

Margaret is a horrible woman; nobody likes her.

My uncle is a difficult person. He is never happy.

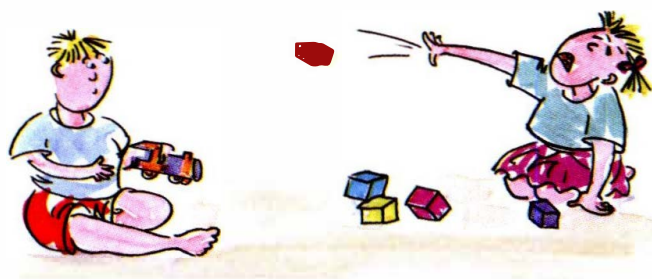
That waiter is stupid. I asked for coffee and he has given me tea! (stupid is a very strong word)

I don't like selfish people. [people who think only of themselves]

## C Children

We often say that children are good or well-behaved. If they are not, we say they are naughty.

Tim is very good / well-behaved, but his sister is very naughty.



## D Prepositions

Jean was nice / kind / wonderful to me when I was in hospital.

You were horrible to me yesterday!

It was nice / kind of you to remember my birthday.

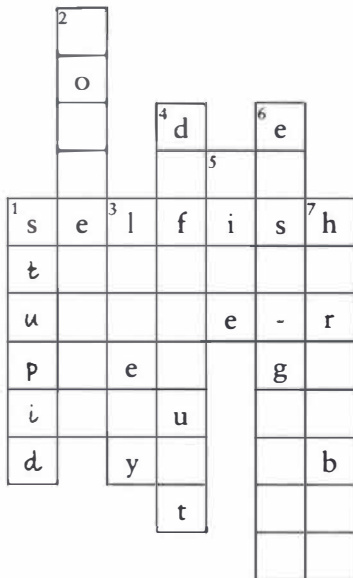
# Exercises

## 56.1 Complete B's sentences.

- 1 A: Jessica's very nice.  
B: She's more than nice, she's wonderful!.....
- 2 A: Was Paul nice to you?  
B: No, he was really .....
- 3 A: Let me carry your bag.  
B: Thanks, that's .....
- 4 A: Is your little cousin well-behaved?  
B: No, he's .....
- 5 A: Katie only thinks about herself.  
B: I know. She's really .....



## 56.2 Complete the word puzzle. Use the letters given and words from the opposite page. (Note that 'selfish' is the only word that reads across; all the other words read down.)



## 56.3 Circle the words that describe you.

I am: easy-going    sometimes difficult    kind to animals    sometimes stupid  
 happy    intelligent    selfish    horrible to some people    nice to my friends

## 56.4 Fill in the correct prepositions.

- 1 The teacher is never horrible to..... the students.
- 2 It is kind ..... you to help me.
- 3 Barbara was wonderful ..... me when I needed a friend.
- 4 It was nice ..... her to ring me.

**Follow-up**

Think of some people you like and some people you don't like and write sentences about them using vocabulary from this unit.  
 e.g. I don't like (name). He/She's horrible.

# Words and prepositions

## A Phrasal and prepositional verbs

Some verbs are used with different particles and prepositions.

I **listen to** the radio in bed in the morning.

I **waited for** the bus for half an hour yesterday.

I **asked for** a black coffee, not a white one.

Where do I **pay for** our meal?

I **hope you can come to** my party.

This book **belongs to** Sarah Smith.

What are you **thinking about**?

Helena **thanked her mother for** the present.

Jamie **apologised for** being late.



I'm sorry.



## B Phrasal verbs

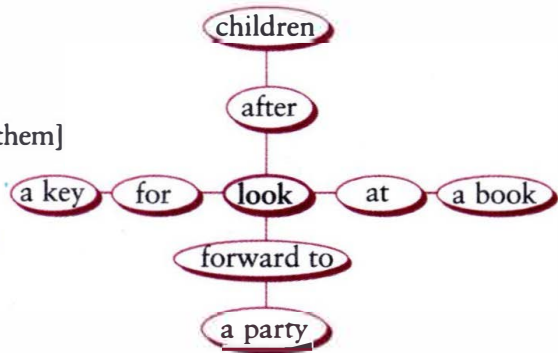
Some verbs have different meanings when they are used with different prepositions, for example, look.

I love **looking at** old photographs.

If you want to find your key, you must **look for** it.

Parents **look after** their children. [they take care of them]

You **look forward to** something nice in the future, for example, a friend's visit, or a holiday.



## C Adjectives

Some adjectives are also followed by prepositions.

I'm **good at** geography but **bad at** maths.

I'm **interested in** (hearing) all your news.

He is **afraid of** mice.

Lucy is **proud of** winning a medal and her mother is **proud of** her.

*Note:* You are **used to** what you know well: I'm **used to** getting up early, I always do.

You have to **get used to** something new, for example a new school or driving on the other side of the road.

### Error warning

She's a lovely person and I'm really happy about her success [NOT happy for her success].

## D Grammar

Prepositions are followed by a noun: Joe is good at tennis or by the *-ing* form of the verb: Joe is good at playing the piano.

### Tip

Look carefully at prepositions when you read in English. Make a note of any phrases which use prepositions in a new way.



# Exercises

**57.1** Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                                   |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 John is waiting                 | a for his mistake.       |
| 2 This bicycle belongs            | b about the holidays.    |
| 3 The children thanked their aunt | c for a train to London. |
| 4 Sally is listening              | d to the hotel.          |
| 5 He apologised                   | e for our tickets.       |
| 6 Let me pay                      | f to the football match. |
| 7 Hamid is thinking               | g to her MP3 player.     |
| 8 Over 100 people came            | h for the money.         |

**57.2** Complete these sentences using the appropriate preposition(s) and a word or phrase from the box.

books    the children    me    people    my party    it    a new one    them

- Isabel's granddaughter can't read yet but she likes looking at books.
- A nurse looks .....
- I can't find my glasses? Could you help me look .....
- It's my birthday soon. I'm really looking .....
- Why are you looking ..... in that way? Is my face dirty?
- I don't like my job very much. I'm looking .....
- Alex is going to France in July. He is looking .....
- I often look ..... when their parents go out.

**57.3** Write prepositions.

Anne has got used <sup>1</sup> to ..... her new school and is doing well there. She is very good <sup>2</sup> ..... English and maths. She always listens <sup>3</sup> ..... her teachers. She is very interested <sup>4</sup> ..... sport and she belongs <sup>5</sup> ..... a tennis club and a swimming club. Her parents were very proud <sup>6</sup> ..... her when she won a medal for swimming last month. Anne was very happy <sup>7</sup> ..... her medal too, of course. She showed it to me when she came <sup>8</sup> ..... my house last Saturday.

**57.4** Hiroshi is a visitor from Japan. Make sentences about what he found strange (X) in Britain and what he didn't find strange (✓).

- speaking English every day X He wasn't used to speaking English every day.
- driving on the left ✓ Hiroshi was used to driving on the left.
- eating British food X
- traffic jams ✓
- expensive shops ✓
- British money X

**57.5** Answer the questions about yourself.

- What are / were you good at at school? What are / were you bad at?
- What do you usually ask for when you go to a café?
- What are you proud of?
- What are you afraid of?
- What kind of music do you like listening to?
- What are you looking forward to?
- Do you belong to any clubs?
- Are you used to eating different kinds of food?

# 58 Prefixes

Prefixes (at the beginning of words) can help you to understand what a new word means. Here are some common prefixes.

prefix	meaning	examples
ex (+ noun)	was but now isn't	ex-wife, ex-president
half (+ noun or adjective)	50% of something	half-price, half-hour
in, im (+ adjective)	not	informal, impossible
non (+ adjective or noun)	not	non-smoking
pre (+ noun, adjective, verb)	before	pre-school, pre-heat
re (+ verb)	again	redo, rewrite
un (+ adjective or noun)	not	unhappy, unsafe

An ex-wife is a wife who is now divorced.

President Bush is an ex-president of the USA.

Something that cost £10 yesterday and costs £5 today is half-price.

A half-hour journey is a journey of 30 minutes.

Informal clothes are clothes like jeans and trainers. Formal clothes are things like a suit.

If something is impossible, you can't do it. It's impossible to read with your eyes closed.

You must not smoke in a non-smoking restaurant.

Pre-school children are too young to go to school.

You nearly always need to pre-heat the oven before you cook something.

To redo something is to do it a second time, and to rewrite something is to write it a second time.

Unhappy means sad, the opposite of happy.

Unsafe means dangerous, the opposite of safe.



## Tip

Sometimes words with prefixes have a hyphen (-), e.g. a half-hour programme, and sometimes they don't, e.g. an impossible question. Use a dictionary when you are not sure if there is a hyphen or not.

# Exercises

## 58.1 Choose one of the words from the opposite page to fit in these sentences.

- 1 This part of the restaurant is *non-smoking*...
- 2 I can't read this. Please ..... your homework.
- 3 In ..... English we often say 'Hi', not 'Good morning'.
- 4 I liked school but my sister was very ..... there.
- 5 I bought two T-shirts because they were ..... in the sale.
- 6 Don't walk on that wall – the notice says it is .....

## 58.2 Write your own sentences to show what these words mean.

- 1 ex-wife *Jennifer Aniston is Brad Pitt's ex-wife.*
- 2 ex-president .....
- 3 redo .....
- 4 impossible .....
- 5 pre-school .....

## 58.3 What do you think these words and phrases mean? Look at the table opposite to help you.

- 1 an ex-husband *a husband who is now divorced from his wife*
- 2 pre-exam nerves
- 3 an incorrect answer
- 4 an unread book
- 5 to retell a story
- 6 a half-brother
- 7 an unfinished letter
- 8 a non-alcoholic drink
- 9 to reread a book
- 10 to resend an email

## 58.4 Find the negative forms of these words. Use a dictionary to help you.

- 1 possible *impossible*
- 2 comfortable
- 3 polite
- 4 pleasant
- 5 attractive

### Follow-up

Look at the table opposite and write one more example of a word using each prefix. Use a dictionary to help you. Write a sentence using your word.

ex: *My ex-boss lives near me.*

half: *You stop at half-time in a football match.*

Suffixes come at the end of words. They help you to understand the meaning of a new word. Here are some common suffixes.

suffix	meaning	examples
er, or (noun)	person	worker, swimmer, instructor
er, or (noun)	machine, thing	cooker, calculator
ful (adjective)	full of	useful, beautiful
less (adjective)	without	useless, endless
ly	makes an adverb from an adjective	quickly, happily
ness	makes an abstract noun from an adjective	happiness, sadness
y	makes an adjective from a noun	sandy, sunny

He's a hard worker. He works 12 hours a day.

She's a very good swimmer. She was in the Olympic team.

Her tennis is much better now that she has a new instructor.

We've got a new gas cooker so the food should be delicious!

Can we use our calculators in the maths test?



Thanks for the information. It was very useful.

What a beautiful photo. I think it will win the competition.

This book is no help at all – it's useless.

I can't finish this book – it's endless.

He was late for work so he went quickly to the station.

They are happily married with two young children.

The mother was smiling with happiness as she held her baby in her arms.

They said goodbye with great sadness because they knew they would probably never meet again.

That beach is very popular with tourists because it is long and sandy.

It's a lovely sunny day – let's go to the beach.



# Exercises

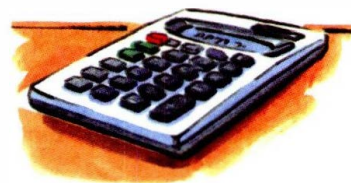
**59.1** Which of the example words from the opposite page do these pictures illustrate?



1 a sunny day.....



3 a s.....



5 a c.....



2 a golf i.....



4 He's smiling h.....



6 a u..... thing

**59.2** Find the adjectives and match them with the nouns they go with in the box. Some adjectives can go with more than one noun.

electric	worker	fast	beautiful	cooker	sandy	weather	sunny	car	hard	idea
useful	book	endless	swimmer	beach	guitar	smile	picture	fun	useless	

- 1 electric cooker / guitar.....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....

- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....
- 9 .....

**59.3** Complete the sentences using the word in brackets and a suffix.

- 1 Can I use your bottle opener....., please? (open)
- 2 I'm tired because I slept very ..... last night. (bad)
- 3 The waiter was very ..... and explained everything on the menu. (help)
- 4 Thank you very much for all your ..... . (kind)
- 5 It's important not to make ..... mistakes in your writing. (care)
- 6 It was wet and ..... most of last week. (wind)
- 7 I did the homework very ..... . (easy)
- 8 Do you know a good ..... who could do some work on our house? (build)

**59.4** What do you think these words and phrases mean? Use the information about suffixes from the opposite page to help you.

- 1 a hair dryer      a thing that you use to dry your hair
- 2 a traveller
- 3 slowly
- 4 hopeful
- 5 rainy
- 6 painless
- 7 badly
- 8 a tin opener
- 9 a footballer
- 10 snowy

# Words you may confuse

This unit looks at words which are easy to mix up.

## A Similar sounds

quite /kwaɪt/ / quiet /kwaɪət/

This book is quite good. → bad → quite good → good

My bedroom is very quiet. (= silent)

lose /luːz/ / loose /luːs/

A: Why do I always lose my keys!

B: Here they are.

A: Oh, thank you!



If you lose something, you do not know where it is / you can't find it.

These trousers are very loose. (loose means they are not tight, because they are too big)



fell / felt

Fell is the past of fall.

Yesterday I fell and broke my arm.

Felt is the past of feel.

I felt ill yesterday, but I feel OK today.



cook / cooker

He is a very good cook. [the person who cooks]

This cooker costs £500. [the thing you cook on]



## B Similar or related meanings

lend / borrow

If you lend something, you *give* it.

If you borrow something, you *get* it.

Sam wants a bicycle:

SAM: Will you lend me your bicycle? (= you *give* it to me for one day / an hour, etc.)

• Can I borrow your bicycle? (= I *get* it from you)

RITA: Yes, take it.

SAM: Thanks.



Do you want to borrow it?

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

check / control

The passport officer checked my passport. [looked at it]

We use the mouse to control the computer. [tell it what to do]



## C Other words often mixed up

They're waiting for the bus.

I hope I pass my exams. [I really want to pass]

I haven't studied; I expect I'll fail my exams. [it's probable]

In English the **afternoon** is from about 12 o'clock till 5 or 6 pm.

The **evening** is from 5 or 6 pm until about 9 or 10 pm.

After 9 or 10 pm it is the **night**.



# Exercises

## 60.1 Fill the gaps with words from A opposite. The first letter is given.

- 1 Please be *quiet*..... . The baby is sleeping.
- 2 If you *L*..... your passport you must call the embassy.
- 3 I *f*..... tired this morning, but I am OK now.
- 4 We are going to buy a *c*..... for our new kitchen.
- 5 She *f*..... and broke her leg. She had to go to hospital.
- 6 It's *q*..... cold today.
- 7 Do you have this skirt in a smaller size? This one is too *L*..... .
- 8 My sister is a good *c*..... . I love eating at her house.

## 60.2 What does each word below sound like? Circle the correct word.

- |         |              |               |
|---------|--------------|---------------|
| 1 lose  | <i>juice</i> | <u>shoes</u>  |
| 2 loose | <i>juice</i> | <i>shoes</i>  |
| 3 quite | <i>right</i> | <i>higher</i> |
| 4 quiet | <i>right</i> | <i>higher</i> |

## 60.3 Answer these questions.

- 1 Why do we use a mouse with a computer? To *control it*.....
- 2 What does the passport officer do to your passport? He/She .....
- 3 If you want to use someone's camera for two hours, what do you say?  
Can I .....
- 4 What do you say to someone at 3 pm? Good .....
- 5 What do people do at a bus stop? They .....
- 6 What do you say to a friend if you need £1?  
Can you .....
- 7 What do you say if someone makes too much noise? Please be .....

## 60.4 Answer these questions.

- 1 Are you expecting any visitors today?
- 2 What do you hope to do this summer?
- 3 Do you borrow things from your friends? What things?
- 4 Would you lend £100 to your best friend?

Look at these units to find other words that are often confused:

Do and make	Units 38 and 39
Take and bring	Units 41 and 42
Say, tell, speak and talk	Unit 46
Rob and steal	Unit 32

### Follow-up

Look up these pairs of verbs in a dictionary and make notes on the difference in meaning:

- 1 lie – lay – lain  
lay – laid – laid
- 2 rise – rose – risen  
raise – raised – raised

# Answer key

## Unit 1

- 1.1** 2 brother                      7 nephew  
3 aunt                              8 niece  
4 uncle                            9 mother  
5 grandmother                10 wife  
6 grandfather                 11 cousin

- 1.2** 2 aunt  
3 only child  
4 father  
5 wife  
6 mother  
7 grandchildren  
8 wives  
9 grandparents (parents is also a possible answer)

**1.3** Possible answers:

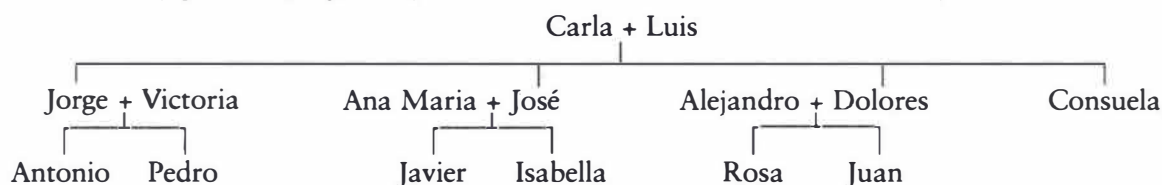
- 1 Chen has / has got one brother and one sister.
- 2 Chen has / has got two cousins.
- 3 Chen has / has got two nephews but he hasn't got any nieces.
- 4 Chen has / has got only one grandmother now.
- 5 Chen doesn't come from a very big family.

**1.4** Your own answer

### Follow-up

Possible family tree:

I am José. Ana Maria is my wife. Javier and Isabella are our children. Javier is our son and Isabella is our daughter. Rosa is our niece. Antonio, Pedro and Juan are our nephews. Carla and Luis are my parents. Jorge is my brother and Dolores and Consuela are my sisters.



## Unit 2

**2.1** Possible answers:

- 2 My father was born in South Africa on June 4th 1949.
- 3 My brother was born in London on June 6th 1974.
- 4 My husband was born in Russia on February 6th 1969.
- 5 My son was born in Cambridge on October 16th 1995.

- 2.2** 2 (bride)groom                      6 funeral  
3 single                                 7 honeymoon  
4 weigh                                 8 widowed  
5 divorced



**2.3** 2 to 3 of 4 on 5 born 6 after

**2.4** 2 Christopher Columbus was born in 1451 and died in 1506.  
3 Leonardo da Vinci was born in 1452 and died in 1519.  
4 Princess Diana was born in 1961 and died in 1997.  
5 Heath Ledger was born in 1979 and died in 2008.

**2.5** 2 death 3 dead 4 died 5 dead

**2.6** *Possible answer:*

I have one brother and one sister. My sister got married this year. For her honeymoon, she went to Italy. My brother has two children. They were born in 2001 and 2008.

### Unit 3

**3.1** 2 nose 7 tooth  
3 heart 8 thumb  
4 stomach 9 back  
5 shoulder 10 waist  
6 ear

**3.2** 2 toes 6 ears  
3 teeth 7 knee / shoulders  
4 nose 8 blood  
5 heart 9 brain

**3.3** 2 That woman has got very big feet.  
3 My grandfather has a pain in his shoulder.  
4 The baby has already got two teeth.  
5 The little girl needs to wash her face and her hands before dinner.  
6 My hair is dirty. I need to wash it.

**3.4** 2 football 5 headscarf  
3 lipstick 6 handbag  
4 hairbrush

### Follow-up

- 1 b arms c legs
- 2 The eye is the hole in the needle.
- 3 The face is the front of the clock (with the numbers on it). The big hand shows the minutes and the little hand shows the hours.
- 4 The neck is the narrow part at the top of the bottle.
- 5 The foot of the mountain is the bottom of the mountain (the lowest part).

### Unit 4

**4.1** 1 suit, shirt, tie  
2 T-shirt, shorts  
3 socks, trainers  
4 carrying, bag  
5 belt  
6 jacket, coat

- 4.2** 2 belt – waist                    6 glove – hand  
 3 hat – head                            7 tights – legs  
 4 glasses – eyes                    8 scarf – neck  
 5 shoe – foot

- 4.3** 1 is                                        5 were; are  
 2 is wearing                            6 Is  
 3 has; is carrying                    7 are  
 4 is; are                                 8 is wearing / has

- 4.4** 2 jumper                                7 shirt  
 3 watch                                    8 coat  
 4 skirt                                     9 umbrella  
 5 bag                                       10 boots  
 6 hat

**4.5**

morning	night
get dressed	get undressed
or put your clothes on	or take your clothes off

**4.6** *Possible answer:*

I'm wearing a blue T-shirt and black trousers. I've got white shoes on. I'm wearing a watch, three rings and a pair of glasses.

**Unit 5**

- 5.1** 2 tall                                    5 young  
 3 slim / thin                            6 fat / overweight  
 4 fair                                       7 elderly

- 5.2** 2 Is Elena's hair blonde / fair?  
 3 Is Mike's hair long?  
 4 Are your parents elderly? (Are your parents old? is a less polite question)  
 5 Is his sister pretty / beautiful?  
 6 Why is Sara so thin?

**5.3** *Possible answers:*

- 2 Jeff has short fair hair and a beard.  
 3 Caroline's got dark skin and dark hair.  
 4 Stefan's hair is long and he has a moustache.

- 5.4** 2 What does your teacher look like?  
 3 How much do you weigh? / How heavy are you?  
 4 How old is your mother?  
 5 How tall is your sister?  
 6 What do your parents look like?

**5.5** *Possible answers:*

- 2 She's tall and slim with blonde hair.  
 3 I'm 75 kilos. I'm not overweight but I'm not thin.  
 4 She's middle-aged. She's 49.  
 5 She's very tall for her age. She's 1 metre 58.  
 6 They're medium height. My mother has long dark hair and my father has fair hair and a beard and a moustache.

## Follow-up

*Possible answers:*

Joanna: Joanna is tall. She has long black hair and brown eyes. She's very pretty.

Kevin: Kevin is medium height. He has fair hair and a beard. His eyes are blue. He's average-looking.

My mother: My mother is short with grey hair. She has green eyes. She's beautiful.

## Unit 6

- 6.1** 2 I feel sick. / I don't feel very well. / I feel ill.  
3 feel ill.  
4 I've got toothache.  
5 a cold

**6.2**

illness	treatment
a headache	take an aspirin
toothache	go to the dentist
a heart attack	go to hospital
a cold	go to bed with a hot drink

- 6.3** 2 cholera                      4 hay fever  
3 asthma                        5 cancer / heart attacks

**6.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 Yes, I eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, and not many sweet things.
- 2 I like / love swimming and cycling.
- 3 Yes, I feel stressed when I have exams.
- 4 Yes, I had an operation once / I broke my leg, etc. ('Be in hospital' means you are ill, you are a patient. 'Be in a hospital' can just mean you are visiting someone.)

## Unit 7

**7.1** *Possible answers:*

- 2 I hate cowboy films.
- 3 I like flying.
- 4 I like tea.
- 5 I don't like football.
- 6 I love cats.
- 7 I like cars.
- 8 I don't like jazz music.

**7.2** *Possible answers:*

- 2 I prefer cats to dogs.
- 3 I prefer sightseeing to sunbathing.
- 4 I prefer cars to bikes.
- 5 I prefer strawberry to chocolate ice cream.
- 6 I prefer watching sport to doing sport.

**7.3** *Possible answers:*

- 2 I hope (that) the lesson ends soon.
- 3 I want some food.
- 4 I hope (that) my friend feels better soon.
- 5 I want to go to bed.
- 6 I want to cry.
- 7 I hope (that) it gets hotter soon.
- 8 I want him/her to feel / be happy again soon.

- 7.4** 2 Fred is thirsty.      5 Fiona is surprised.  
 3 William is cold.      6 The children are hot.  
 4 Sunita is tired.

- 7.5** 2 I am happy about my sister's good news.  
 3 The teacher wants us to learn these new words.  
 4 I really like spiders.  
 5 My brother has a good new job. I'm very happy for him.  
 6 My parents want me to go to university.  
 7 I feel very well. How about you?  
 8 Priya is a bit tired this morning.

### Follow-up

*Possible answers:*

- 2 I felt surprised yesterday when an old friend rang me.  
 3 I felt upset when my boss was rude to me.  
 4 I felt hungry when I saw some chocolate in a shop window.

## Unit 8

- 8.1** 2 Good luck!      6 Fine, thanks.  
 3 Congratulations! / Well done!      7 Hello! / Hi!  
 4 Goodbye.      8 Thank you.  
 5 Happy Birthday!

- 8.2** 2 Happy Christmas!      5 Cheers!  
 3 Sorry!      6 Good morning!  
 4 Congratulations!

- 8.3** 2 Thank you. Cheers!      6 Happy New Year!  
 3 Goodnight. Sleep well.      7 Sorry!  
 4 Good morning.      8 Happy Christmas!  
 5 Good afternoon.

**8.4** *Possible answers:*

ANN: How are you?  
 YOU: Fine, thanks.  
 ANN: It's my birthday today.  
 YOU: Happy birthday!  
 ANN: Would you like a drink?  
 YOU: Yes, please. An orange juice.  
 ANN: Here you are. Cheers!  
 YOU: Cheers!

**8.5** *Possible answer:*

A: Hello, good morning.  
 B: Hi. How are you?  
 A: Fine, thanks. And you?  
 B: Fine. A bit nervous. I'm taking my driving test today.  
 A: Good luck! That's funny, I passed mine last week.  
 B: Oh, congratulations!  
 A: It's my birthday today.  
 B: Is it? Happy Birthday! Why don't we go out for a drink this evening?  
 A: OK. See you later. Goodbye.  
 B: Goodbye. See you soon.

## Unit 9

- 9.1** 2 around                      5 actually (really is also possible)  
3 really                              6 around  
4 else

- 9.2** 2 mind      3 Let's      4 Be careful      5 anyway

- 9.3** 2 Look out!                      5 Hurry up!  
3 What a pity!                    6 Well done!  
4 It's up to you.

- 9.4** VERA: We need to celebrate. I got a new job!  
LUKE: Well done! How about going out for a meal this evening?  
VERA: Great! Let's go to that Italian restaurant. Or do you prefer the Chinese one?  
LUKE: I don't mind. I like the Italian one but it's very expensive.  
VERA: Oh, it doesn't matter.  
LUKE: OK. Why don't we go to the Italian restaurant and then we could go to the cinema afterwards? Your new job needs a special celebration.  
VERA: I agree. And I'd love to see that film with George Clooney. Would you?  
LUKE: Absolutely!

## Unit 10

- 10.1** 2 Pasta; pizza (in either order)      5 meat  
3 potatoes                                      6 hot dog  
4 fish and chips

**10.2**

fruit	vegetables
pineapple	beans
grapes	onions
apple	carrot
pear	garlic
	mushrooms

- 10.3** 2 strawberry                      5 potatoes  
3 peas                                      6 tomatoes  
4 apple

- 10.4** 2 beer                                      5 fruit juice  
3 milk                                      6 mineral water  
4 coffee

- 10.5** 2 c      3 c      4 b      5 a      6 c

**10.6** *Possible answer:*

My favourite foods are pizza, fish, strawberries and pineapple.  
My favourite drinks are tea, coffee and fruit juice.  
They are quite good for you.

## Unit 11

- 11.1  
2 yes  
3 yes  
4 no, the freezer is colder than the fridge  
5 yes  
6 no, a tea towel is for drying plates

- 11.2 *Possible questions:*  
2 Where's the saucepan / frying pan?  
3 Where do these bowls go?  
4 Can I help with the washing-up?  
5 Where can I find the milk?

- 11.3 *Possible answers:*  
2 a cup, a teapot, a spoon  
3 a frying pan, a cooker  
4 a plate or bowl, a knife and fork, or a spoon and fork, or chopsticks  
5 a glass or a cup or a mug  
6 a microwave  
7 washing-up liquid, a sink and a cloth or a dishwasher  
8 a washing machine

- 11.4  
2 a frying pan and a glass  
3 a teapot and a tea towel (or cloth)  
4 on the worktop next to the cooker  
5 a kitchen roll  
6 (a cupboard with) a bin and a cloth

## Unit 12

- 12.1  
2 wardrobe  
3 chest of drawers  
4 mirror  
5 hairbrush  
6 comb  
7 bed  
8 alarm clock  
9 bedside lamp  
10 bedside table

- 12.2 *Possible answers:*  
toothpaste, hairbrush, comb, pyjamas, shower gel

- 12.3  
2 Selim and Umit are washing their faces.  
3 Mrs Park is going downstairs.  
4 Mr Park is having a bath.  
5 Jaime is getting dressed.  
6 Lee is turning off the light.

- 12.4 *Possible answers:*  
bath, shower, toilet, basin, soap, shower gel, shampoo, toothbrush, toothpaste, hairbrush, comb, razor, mirror, bathroom cupboard, shelf

- 12.5 *Possible answers:*  
2 My bedroom has two windows.  
3 In my bedroom there is a small bed.  
4 There is one wardrobe on the right of the room.  
5 True  
6 I've got a lamp, some books, a radio and an alarm clock on my bedside table.  
7 There is a chest of drawers next to the wardrobe.  
8 I have got a dressing table.

- 12.6** 2 10.30 (for example)      6 off      10 shower / bath  
 3 undressed      7 fall      11 clean  
 4 get      8 wake      12 get  
 5 for      9 up

**Unit 13**

- 13.1** 2 a sofa      6 a hi-fi  
 3 a coffee table      7 a carpet or rug  
 4 a picture      8 a remote control  
 5 a light switch

- 13.2** 2 relax in an armchair  
 3 close the curtains  
 4 pass the remote control  
 5 listen to the radio  
 6 watch TV

- 13.3** 2 I don't often listen to the radio.  
 3 We need some more bookshelves in this room.  
 4 I watched television all evening yesterday. (not 'at')  
 5 It's dark now. Please close the curtains.  
 6 Jim has some very nice furniture in his house.

**13.4**

F	T	A	L	W	X	A	R	O	C	F	Y	D
E	R	L	S	O	C	K	E	T	U	I	I	U
D	K	A	G	L	N	T	B	C	R	I	E	F
R	E	M	O	T	E	C	O	N	T	R	O	L
A	Y	P	F	C	H	A	I	R	A	P	J	I
D	E	C	H	K	I	R	G	T	I	R	U	G
I	B	O	O	K	F	P	S	I	N	E	B	H
O	G	F	E	A	I	E	L	H	S	C	R	T
S	U	A	T	L	E	T	V	C	A	E	U	O

**Follow-up**

*Possible answer:*

In my living room there is not much furniture. There is a table, a TV, a desk, a sofa and two armchairs. The walls are white and there are some pictures on them. I like to relax in the living room. In the evening I watch TV there, or listen to music.

**Unit 14**

- 14.1** 2 A doctor works in a hospital (or a clinic, or a surgery).  
 3 A waiter works in a restaurant (or a café).  
 4 A secretary works in an office.  
 5 A shop assistant works in a shop.  
 6 A hairdresser works in a beauty salon (or a hairdresser's).

- 14.2** 2 engineer  
 3 taxi driver  
 4 nurse  
 5 mechanic  
 6 secretary

- 14.3** Across Down  
 1 bus driver 1 doctor  
 2 teacher 2 waiter  
 3 writer 3 nurse

- 14.4** 2 engineer 5 clerk  
 3 warden 6 officer  
 4 librarian

**14.5** Possible answers:

- 1 I'm a teacher. 2 In a university. 3 Yes, very interesting.

**Unit 15**

- 15.1** 2 d 4 f 6 i 8 a  
 3 g 5 b 7 e 9 h

- 15.2** ruler, pencil sharpener, board rubber, rubber, drawing pin, pencil, tape recorder, cassette, notepad, OHP

**15.3** Possible answer:

In the room where I study English I can see a board, a noticeboard, a notebook, some pens, a pencil, a rubber and a pencil sharpener.

- 15.4** 2 does 7 fails  
 3 passes 8 study  
 4 take / do 9 do  
 5 passes 10 get  
 6 go

**15.5** Possible answer:

My three favourite subjects were languages, English and art. I didn't like PE, physics and maths.

**Unit 16**

**16.1** Possible answer:

I have the following: address, letter, envelope, stamp, phone number, phone, mobile, computer, screen, memory stick, mouse, keyboard, mobile device, CD-ROM, and email address.

- 16.2** 2 phone box 6 address 10 laptop  
 3 mobile (phone) 7 envelope 11 memory stick  
 4 stamp 8 letter box 12 CD-ROM  
 5 mouse 9 screen

- 16.3** 2 speak 5 take (or give him)  
 3 sorry 6 call (or phone or ring)  
 4 at

**16.4** Possible answers:

- 1 01223 240754: oh one double two three, two four oh, seven five four  
 0207 4417895: oh two oh seven, double four one, seven eight nine five  
 2 steve@stuff.co.uk: Steve at stuff dot co dot U-K  
 katerina08@coldmail.com: katerina oh eight at coldmail dot com



**16.5** Possible answers:

- 1 I prefer to phone my friends.    3 I go online several times a day.    5 I don't write letters very often.  
2 I send more emails.    4 I prefer to use a laptop.

**Unit 17**

**17.1** 2 going    3 time    4 by    5 send

**17.2** 2 a package holiday (or package tour)    4 a walking holiday  
3 a coach tour    5 a winter holiday

**17.3** Possible answers:

	you can take a lot of luggage	very fast	cheap	you see a lot as you travel	relaxing
ferry	✓✓		✓	✓✓	✓✓
car	✓✓✓	✓✓	✓✓	✓✓✓	✓
flight		✓✓✓	✓	✓	✓✓

**17.4** 2 passport    5 phrasebook  
3 camera    6 tickets  
4 luggage (or suitcase)

**17.5** 2 a visa    5 traveller's cheques  
3 a plane    6 a suitcase  
4 a rucksack

**17.6** 2 nightlife    3 local    4 postcard

**Unit 18**

**18.1** 2 toy shop    5 gift shop  
3 butcher    6 baker  
4 newsagent

**18.2** 2 a supermarket    5 a bookshop  
3 the post office (or a newsagent)    6 a department store (or perhaps a supermarket)  
4 a gift shop

**18.3** 2 ground floor    5 first floor    8 basement  
3 fourth floor    6 second floor    9 third floor  
4 basement    7 second floor    10 fourth floor

**18.4** 2 cash  
3 (a £20) note  
4 a credit card  
5 change  
6 a shop that sells meat  
7 the floor above the ground floor (in a British building)  
8 a shop that sells newspapers and magazines  
9 the floor under the ground floor

**18.5** 2 Closed    3 Pull    4 Push    5 Open

**18.6** 1 cost    2 pay    3 (carrier) bag

## Unit 19

- 19.1** 2 shower                    5 hairdryer                    8 lift  
3 TV                                6 sea  
4 phone                            7 key

- 19.2** 2 a    3 h    4 f    5 b    6 g    7 c    8 e

- 19.3** 1 At reception you can order room service.  
2 We'd like a double room with a view of the garden, please.  
3 The lift is over there. Take it to the second floor.  
4 Please fill in this form.  
5 I'd like a wake-up call at 7.30 and I'd like to have breakfast in my room, please.  
6 I have a reservation for a single room with a bathroom.  
7 Can I have the bill, please? I'll check it now.  
8 I'm leaving today. Can I exchange some dollars here before I check out?

**19.4** Possible answers:

- Can I have breakfast in my room, please?  
Can I have / check my bill, please?  
Can I have a double room for tonight, please?  
Can I have some help with my luggage? or Can I leave my luggage here, please?

**19.5** Possible answers:

- 1 It costs about £100.  
2 00 44 (from e.g. France)  
3 Breakfast is usually from 7 to 10.  
4 I think a TV is most important for me.

## Unit 20

**20.1** Possible answers:

- 2 restaurant                    4 café  
3 fast food restaurant        5 bar / pub

**20.2** Possible answers:

- 2 café – Jim's Corner Café        4 restaurant – The Taj Mahal  
3 take-away – Corner Kebabs      5 bar – The Red Lion

- 20.3** 2 curry    3 salad    4 pie    5 steak

- 20.4** WAITER: Are you ready to order?  
CUSTOMER: Yes, I'd like vegetable soup and steak, please.  
WAITER: How would you like your steak? Rare, medium or well-done?  
CUSTOMER: Rare, please.  
WAITER: What would you like to drink?  
CUSTOMER: An orange juice, please.

**20.5** Your own answers

**20.6** Possible answers:

- 1 I'd choose mixed salad, vegetable curry and ice cream.  
2 Vegetarians can eat soup of the day, mixed salad and vegetable curry.  
3 I like eating out very much.  
4 I go to a restaurant two or three times a month.

## Unit 21

- 21.1** 2 swimming                    5 volleyball  
3 judo / karate                6 motor racing  
4 sailing
- 21.2** 2 badminton                    6 basketball  
3 table tennis                 7 skiing  
4 snowboarding               8 American football  
5 baseball
- 21.3** 2 Do you play football?  
3 Do you do any sports?  
4 Do you go swimming? / like swimming? / swim?  
5 What is your favourite sport?  
6 Where do people play rugby?

**21.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 swimming, skiing, table tennis, tennis, kayaking
- 2 in a swimming pool, in the mountains, at home, at a sports centre, on a river
- 3 I like swimming, kayaking and table tennis.
- 4 I don't like tennis.
- 5 I'd like to go sailing.

## Unit 22

- 22.1** 2 science fiction                6 romantic comedy  
3 horror                         7 thriller  
4 action                         8 musical  
5 cartoon

**22.2** *Possible answers:*

- 2 romantic comedy – *My Best Friend's Wedding*
- 3 thriller – *Psycho*
- 4 western – *High Noon*
- 5 musical – *High School Musical*
- 6 cartoon – *Shrek*

**22.3**

T H . R . I L L E . R .  
H . O . R . R . O . R  
C . O . M . E . D . Y  
A . C . T . I . O . N  
S . C . I . E . N . C . E . F . I . C . T . I . O . N  
W . E . S . T . E . R . N  
M . U . S . I . C . A . L  
C . A . R . T . O . O . N .

- 22.4** 2 watched (some people say 'saw a DVD')  
3 played  
4 in  
5 film stars  
6 director

### 22.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I like romantic comedies.
- 2 My favourite film star is Nicole Kidman.
- 3 I prefer going to the cinema.
- 4 The last film I saw was *Tropic Thunder*.
- 5 You can look in the newspaper, go online or phone the cinema.

## Unit 23

- 23.1** 2 He's gardening. 5 She's using the Internet. / She's using the computer.  
3 He's reading a newspaper. 6 He's listening to music / a CD.  
4 She's cooking.

- 23.2** 2 reading 5 have / invite 8 see / watch  
3 talk 6 play 9 grows  
4 have 7 download 10 watch

### 23.3 Possible answers:

- 1 We talk, or we have a meal, or we listen to music, etc.
- 2 My best friend sometimes comes to stay. / My cousins sometimes come to stay, etc.
- 3 I like novels, and I read a newspaper every day.
- 4 I talk to them on the phone every day.
- 5 I have an MP3 player and I use it every day.
- 6 I chat to my friends online once or twice a week.
- 7 I often download music or films from the Internet.
- 8 *The Sims* is my favourite computer game.
- 9 I use headphones when I want to listen to music on a train.

### 23.4 Possible answers:

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| gardening          | 2 |
| cooking            | 4 |
| reading            | 5 |
| using the Internet | 5 |
| watching DVDs      | 4 |
| listening to music | 5 |
| doing nothing      | 1 |
| chatting online    | 2 |

## Unit 24

- 24.1** 2 musician 3 musical 4 music 5 musical 6 musicians

- 24.2** 2 Patricia plays the cello in an orchestra.  
3 Chunshen loves playing the drums.  
4 Donna is having a piano lesson.  
5 Alex is a very good trumpet-player.  
6 Bethan plays the clarinet every evening.  
7 William plays the guitar.  
8 Emma is learning the flute. She will be a good flute-player one day.  
9 Suzanna is a violinist.  
10 Donna wants to be a pianist.

- 24.3** 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 c

#### 24.4 Possible answers:

- 1 I download music about once a month.
- 2 I like the violin best.
- 3 Yes, I play the violin and the guitar.
- 4 I would like to learn the piano.
- 5 I like classical music and pop music!

### Unit 25

- 25.1** 2 Brazil                      5 Japan  
3 Spain                         6 Thailand  
4 Morocco
- 25.2** 2 Rome is the capital of Italy.                      7 Berlin is the capital of Germany.  
3 Canberra is the capital of Australia.                      8 Warsaw is the capital of Poland.  
4 Bogotá is the capital of Colombia.                      9 Buenos Aires is the capital of Argentina.  
5 Cairo is the capital of Egypt.                      10 Madrid is the capital of Spain.  
6 London is the capital of the UK.
- 25.3** 2 In Mexico, Spain and Chile they speak Spanish but in Brazil they speak Portuguese.  
3 In Austria, Germany and Switzerland they speak German but in Italy they speak Italian.  
4 In Morocco, Egypt and Saudi Arabia they speak Arabic but in China they speak Chinese.  
5 In Switzerland, Canada and France they speak French but in Scotland they speak English.
- 25.4** 2 Thai                      7 Peruvian  
3 German                      8 Chinese  
4 Egyptian                      9 Australian  
5 Argentinian                      10 Polish  
6 Spanish
- 25.5** Check your answers with your teacher.

#### Follow-up

The Sahara is in Africa.  
The Amazon is in South America.  
Wagga Wagga is in Australia.  
The Volga is in Europe.  
Mount Kilimanjaro is in Africa.  
The Mississippi is in North America.  
Mount Fuji is in Asia.  
Lake Titicaca is in South America.

### Unit 26

- 26.1** 2 f    3 d    4 g    5 c    6 e    7 b
- 26.2** 3 It is windy in La Paz.  
4 It is cloudy in Paris.  
5 It is foggy in Tashkent.  
6 It is sunny in Seoul. / The sun is shining in Seoul.  
7 It is snowing in Washington. / It's snowy in Washington.
- 26.3** 2 rains                      6 degrees  
3 weather                      7 storm  
4 snows                      8 cold  
5 lightning

**26.4** *Possible answers:*

- 2 It is usually 20 degrees in summer and 0 (zero) degrees in winter.
- 3 There are sometimes thunderstorms in August.
- 4 It is not usually very wet in spring.
- 5 We almost never have hurricanes.
- 6 Winter is my favourite season because I like snow.

**26.5** *Possible answers:*

- 2 sunny weather – I like to go to the beach / for a walk / lie in the sun.
- 3 a rainy day – I don't like to go out / I don't like to do sports.
- 4 snow – I like to walk in the snow / I like to go skiing.
- 5 a windy day – I like to go windsurfing / I don't like to go out / I love to go for a walk.

**Unit 27**

- 27.1**
- |                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 2 at the tourist information office | 6 at the (train / railway) station |
| 3 at the bank                       | 7 at / in the shopping centre      |
| 4 in / at the car park              | 8 at / in the library              |
| 5 at the museum                     |                                    |

- 27.2**
- |              |                                   |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2 Exit       | 4 Please do not walk on the grass |
| 3 No smoking | 5 Entrance                        |

- 27.3**
- 2 The bus station / stop is over there on the left.
  - 3 For the Town Hall take the number 14 bus.
  - 4 There is a post office on the other side of the road.
  - 5 You can find a cash machine at the bank in High Street.
  - 6 We can get a map of the town at the tourist information office.
  - 7 Can you tell me the way to the railway station, please?
  - 8 Excuse me. I'm looking for a car park.

- 27.4**
- |             |                   |               |
|-------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 2 town hall | 5 railway station | 8 post office |
| 3 library   | 6 pedestrian area | 9 shops       |
| 4 car park  | 7 cash machine    | 10 bus stop   |

**27.5** *Possible answer:*

Go left out of the tourist information office and take the first left. Then take the second left, which is Market Street. The shopping centre is on the left.

**27.6** *Your own answers*

**Unit 28**

- 28.1**
- |           |                |           |
|-----------|----------------|-----------|
| 2 forest  | 6 farm         | 10 fields |
| 3 village | 7 river        | 11 lake   |
| 4 hills   | 8 country road |           |
| 5 wood    | 9 path         |           |

- 28.2**
- |           |           |        |
|-----------|-----------|--------|
| 2 cottage | 3 village | 4 town |
|-----------|-----------|--------|

- 28.3**
- 2 We went walking along a five-kilometre path.
  - 3 We went skiing down the mountain.
  - 4 We saw some wonderful wildlife in the national park.
  - 5 We had a picnic sitting by the river.

- 28.4**
- |                    |                                     |                                    |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 2 He loves nature. | 3 She wants to live in the country. | 4 They are interested in wildlife. |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|

**28.5** Possible answers:

- 2 There are no hills or mountains.
- 3 There's a big lake and two small rivers.
- 4 There are a lot of villages and some small towns.
- 5 There are a lot of small farms and a few very big ones in the countryside.
- 6 There are some good paths for walking near where I live.
- 7 You can't go skiing because there are no hills (and there's usually no snow).
- 8 You can see a lot of beautiful wildlife.

**Unit 29**

**29.1** Possible answers:

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 2 giraffe         | 7 Chickens / hens |
| 3 Parrots; hens   | 8 Rabbits         |
| 4 Tigers; lions   | 9 feed; give      |
| 5 horse; elephant | 10 take           |
| 6 Fish; birds     |                   |

- 29.2**
- |       |         |        |
|-------|---------|--------|
| sheep | lamb    | lamb   |
| cow   | beef    | calf   |
| hen   | chicken | chick  |
| pig   | pork    | piglet |

**29.3** Possible answers:

- 1 Lions, tigers, monkeys, snakes, dogs and cats eat meat.
- 2 Cows, sheep, pigs, goats, parrots (for feathers) and snakes (for snakeskin) give us things that we wear.
- 3 Chickens / hens, tortoises, parrots, snakes and fish produce their babies in eggs.
- 4 We can eat cows, sheep, pigs, chickens / hens, goats, horses and fish (and you may think of some other animals that people eat too).

- 29.4**
- | Across     | Down     |
|------------|----------|
| 3 cats     | 1 parrot |
| 6 lion     | 2 monkey |
| 7 horse    | 4 sheep  |
| 8 elephant | 5 tiger  |
|            | 9 hen    |

- 29.5** Write down the number you remembered. Try again tomorrow and write down how many you remember then.

**Unit 30**

- 30.1** 2 d    3 a    4 f    5 c    6 g    7 b

- 30.2**
- 2 True.
  - 3 False. Planes take off at the beginning of a journey. / Planes land at the end of a journey.
  - 4 False. You need a boarding card to get on a plane.
  - 5 False. Hiring a car is not the same as buying a car.
  - 6 True.

**30.3** Possible answer:

At Cambridge train station take a number 5 bus. The stop is just outside the station. Get off the bus at the hospital, cross the road and take the first road on the left. My house is on the corner of the street and it has a red door.

- 30.4** Across                      Down  
 3 map                              1 timetable  
 6 helicopter                    2 taxi  
 7 bus                              3 motorcycle  
 8 petrol                          4 platform  
    5 train

**Follow-up**

Keep the cards and test yourself every day. If you find this useful, write cards for words from other units of the book.

**Unit 31**

- 31.1** 2 Christmas                      5 Valentine's Day  
 3 Bonfire Night                  6 New Year's Eve / Hogmanay  
 4 Easter

**31.2**

C	H	I	C	K	E	N	F	D	K	N
R	Y	O	R	K	S	H	I	R	E	P
O	C	V	O	M	T	R	S	M	V	U
A	Q	E	W	A	A	T	H	X	L	D
S	M	V	C	S	H	G	E	Q	L	D
T	P	O	T	A	T	O	E	S	C	I
D	F	G	B	L	B	K	U	V	U	N
X	Z	O	E	A	P	I	V	Z	R	G
A	N	D	E	C	H	I	P	S	R	B
C	W	Q	F	T	I	K	K	A	Y	J

- 31.3** 2 India                              4 No. They eat it with their main course (with roast beef).  
 3 curry                              5 in the oven

- 31.4** 2 a state secondary school              4 a state primary school  
 3 a nursery school                          5 a private secondary school

**31.5** *Answers in 2009:*

- 1 Gordon Brown      2 Houses of Parliament      3 Queen Elizabeth II

**Unit 32**

- 32.1** 2 a murderer                              5 a mugger  
 3 a shoplifter / robber                  6 a drug dealer  
 4 a burglar

- 32.2** 2 arrested                                  6 innocent  
 3 vandals                                    7 terrorists  
 4 fine    8 prison  
 5 burglaries / burglars

- 32.3** 2 False – vandals destroy things      3 True      4 False – a car thief steals cars      5 True

- 32.4** 2 stole      3 robbed      4 stolen      5 stole      6 stolen



## Follow-up

*Possible answers:*

- 2 The student should pay a fine and return the book.
- 3 The woman should go to prison.
- 4 The terrorists should go to prison for a long time.
- 5 The woman should pay a fine and the police should take her car away.
- 6 The teenager should work in the park and plant new trees or pay a fine.

## Unit 33

- 33.1** 2 is                                  6 online  
3 documentary                  7 change  
4 nature                                8 interview  
5 teenage

- 33.2** 2 e    3 b    4 a    5 d    6 c

- 33.3** 2 a journalist                                  6 an advert / advertisement  
3 an evening (news)paper                  7 a (TV) channel  
4 a cartoon                                        8 an interview  
5 a nature programme

**33.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I always read an evening newspaper.
- 2 I like news magazines.
- 3 I'll probably watch my favourite soap on TV tonight.
- 4 My favourite TV channel is BBC1.
- 5 I watch about an hour of TV every day.
- 6 I like talk shows and reality TV.
- 7 I watch TV online once or twice a week.
- 8 No, I don't like watching adverts on TV.

## Unit 34

**34.1** *Possible answers:*

- |                                  |                         |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 2 The computer has crashed.      | 6 He's cut his hand.    |
| 3 The cup is broken.             | 7 The room is untidy.   |
| 4 The phone is out of order.     | 8 She is late for work. |
| 5 She has too much work (to do). |                         |

**34.2** *Possible answers:*

- 2 cut finger / hands / knees
- 3 untidy room / desk / hair
- 4 late for school / an appointment / a concert
- 5 a camera / microwave / MP3 player that isn't working
- 6 too much work / rain / wind

**34.3** *Possible answers:*

- 2 dying plants 2
- 3 a cut finger 2
- 4 being late for work or school 1
- 5 a colleague or friend in a bad mood 2
- 6 a coffee machine that isn't working 1
- 7 a broken washing machine 1
- 8 an untidy bedroom 3
- 9 a row with a friend 1
- 10 your computer crashes 1
- 11 lost keys 1
- 12 too much work 3

**34.4** *Possible answers:*

too much work – get an assistant  
a colleague in a bad mood – pay no attention  
a crashed computer – get a technician  
a photocopier that is out of order – repair the photocopier  
a coffee machine that isn't working – drink water

**34.5** *Possible answers:*

My DVD player didn't work.  
My brother lost his credit card.  
I cut my knee.  
My cousin broke a glass.

## Unit 35

- 35.1**
- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 2 car crash  | 6 forest fire |
| 3 flood      | 7 hurricane   |
| 4 war        | 8 traffic jam |
| 5 earthquake | 9 snowstorm   |

- 35.2**
- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 2 traffic jam    | 6 homeless people |
| 3 rush hour      | 7 car crash       |
| 4 forest fire    | 8 earthquake      |
| 5 crowded cities |                   |

- 35.3**
- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 2 a traffic jam | 6 the rush hour |
| 3 crowded       | 7 hungry        |
| 4 a car crash   | 8 a forest fire |
| 5 unemployed    |                 |

**35.4** *Possible answers:*

- |                            |                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 2 forest fire, traffic jam | 4 hurricane, snowstorm, flood        |
| 3 strike, war              | 5 poor, hungry, homeless, unemployed |

- 35.5**
- |                           |             |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| 2 strike                  | 6 homeless  |
| 3 War                     | 7 rush hour |
| 4 car crash               | 8 polluted  |
| 5 earthquakes; snowstorms |             |

## Unit 36

### 36.1 Possible answers:

- 2 lesson
- 3 football / tennis / squash / rugby / darts / chess / cards
- 4 party
- 5 shower / bath / wash
- 6 exam
- 7 meeting
- 8 coffee / cup of coffee / cup of tea / drink
- 9 swim
- 10 dinner / a meal / supper / something to eat

- 36.2
- 2 Nadia has gone to the hairdresser's to have her hair cut.
  - 3 That computer game looks great. Can I have a go?
  - 4 I want to have a word with my teacher after the lesson.
  - 5 Mum didn't have the time to go to the shop today.
  - 6 They don't have *or* they haven't got any cake in the café today.

### 36.3

1	m	2	e	a	l		
			x				
3	p	a	r	4	t	y	
		m		e			
			5	g	a	m	e

### 36.4 Possible answers:

- 2 Have a good journey! / Have a good time!
- 3 Have you got a cold?
- 4 Can I have a look?

### 36.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I've got one brother and two sisters.
- 2 I have them at 9.30 every day.
- 3 I have a salad and a cup of tea.
- 4 Not every day, but I have to go on Wednesday and Friday.
- 5 I've got two.
- 6 Yes, we always have a good time in our English classes.

## Unit 37

- 37.1
- 2 The Sharps are going to the beach.
  - 3 Lili and Karl are going shopping / to the shopping centre.
  - 4 Imran is going to Cairo.
  - 5 Jan is going fishing.

- 37.2
- 2 This year Alison is going to pass her driving test.
  - 3 This year Alison is going to learn Spanish.
  - 4 This year Alison is going to watch less TV.
  - 5 This year Alison is going to keep her room tidy.

**37.3** *Possible answers:*

I sometimes go swimming.  
I never go skiing.  
I sometimes go dancing.  
I never go fishing.  
I always go sightseeing.

**37.4** *Possible answers:*

From Cambridge, trains go to London, Norwich, Ely and Peterborough. Buses go to Oxford, to Heathrow and to Scotland from Cambridge. From Cambridge roads go to London, to Huntingdon and to the sea.

**37.5**

- 2 Mum is going shopping this afternoon.
- 3 ✓
- 4 I love Paris. Did you go there last year?
- 5 Milos is going home at 4 o'clock.
- 6 We always go to the same café. Let's go somewhere different today.
- 7 ✓
- 8 I go swimming every Sunday morning.
- 9 We're going sightseeing today.
- 10 Jo went up to the top of the hill. / Jo went down to the bottom of the hill.
- 11 Let's go fishing today.
- 12 She went out of the shop.
- 13 ✓
- 14 Would you like to go home now?

## Unit 38

**38.1**

- 2 What are the girls doing? They're playing tennis.
- 3 What is the dog doing? It's sleeping.
- 4 What is the man in the house doing? He's washing up. / He's doing the washing-up.
- 5 What is the woman doing? She's reading a book.
- 6 What is the man in the garden doing? He's gardening. / He's doing the gardening.

**38.2** *Questions and possible answers:*

- 2 What does Lara Brown do? She's a secretary.
- 3 What does Sophie Hicks do? She's a doctor.
- 4 What do Jo and Ted do? They're students.

**38.3**

- 2 What did Lara Brown do? She went to a meeting.
- 3 What did Sophie Hicks do? She talked to five patients.
- 4 What did Jo and Ted do? They wrote an essay.

**38.4** *Possible answers:*

I often do the washing-up.  
My husband usually does the washing.  
My son has to do his homework every day.  
My daughter does her exercises every morning.  
I hate doing the housework.  
I love doing the gardening.  
We do business with Eastern Europe.  
I always do my best.

**38.5**

ANNA: Where did you go on your holidays? To London?  
PAVEL: No, we **didn't** go to London this year. We went to Scotland.  
ANNA: Does your grandmother live in Scotland?  
PAVEL: No, she **doesn't** but my uncle **does**.

## Unit 39

- 39.1** 2 made                      5 made / have made / 've made  
3 making                      6 making  
4 make
- 39.2** 2 Long lessons always make me (feel) tired.  
3 She was horrible to me; it made me (feel) angry.  
4 It's a lovely song. It makes me (feel) happy.  
5 That meal was horrible. It made me (feel) sick.
- 39.3** 2 She's making tea.                      5 The children are making a mess.  
3 The children are making a noise.      6 The girl is making her bed.  
4 They're making a video / a film.
- 39.4** 2 Can I take a photo of you?  
3 He's 25 but he never does his own washing. He takes his dirty clothes to his mother's.  
4 Are you doing / taking an exam tomorrow?  
5 Have you done your homework yet?

## Unit 40

- 40.1** 2 back (home)              5 see  
3 into                      6 out of / back from / home from  
4 from
- 40.2** 2 Come here!  
3 We're going to a party. Do you want to come along?  
4 I come from France.
- 40.3** 2 came      3 comes      4 Are; coming      5 comes
- 40.4** *Possible answers:*  
1 I usually come home at five-thirty.  
2 I'm from / I come from Scotland / Jamaica / Pakistan / Latvia / Bolivia, etc.  
3 I sit down and talk to my friends / take out my books.

### Follow-up

*Possible meanings and example sentences:*

- 1 Meaning: 'come round' can mean 'come to someone's house or flat'.  
Example: Do you want to come round this afternoon for a coffee?  
2 Meaning: 'come across' can mean 'meet or find for the first time'.  
Example: I come across lots of new words when I read English books.  
3 Meaning: 'come up' can mean 'be mentioned or occur in conversation'.  
Example: When new words come up in class, the teacher tells us the meaning.

## Unit 41

- 41.1** *Possible answers:*  
1 It takes me 10 minutes to get to university.  
2 It takes me 30 minutes to go from my house to the nearest railway station.  
3 It takes me 20 minutes to get to my best friend's house.  
4 It takes me an hour to do one unit of this book.
- 41.2** 2 take the train      3 take a course      4 take some water
- 41.3** 2 You can / have to take a taxi.      3 He takes the bus.      4 They take the underground.

- 41.4 2 I take my / an umbrella.      4 I take my books and pens / pencils.  
3 I take my passport.                5 I take my mobile (phone).

41.5 *Possible answer:*

It took me about an hour.

### Unit 42

- 42.1 2 bring    3 bring    4 Take    5 take    6 bring

- 42.2 2 e You must take your passport when you travel.  
3 b Come to my house and bring your guitar.  
4 a Go to the post office and take these letters, please.  
5 d Everybody is going to bring food to the party.

- 42.3 1 brings; brought    2 brought    3 take    4 take; bring

- 42.4 1 take; bring it back    2 brought me back    3 take; bring it back

42.5 *Possible answer:*

I always bring / take my vocabulary notebook, a pen and my coursebook to the lesson.

### Unit 43

- 43.1 2 c sick      4 b dark  
3 a hot        5 c wet

- 43.2 2 When the sun comes up it gets light.      4 It's raining! I'm getting wet!  
3 She's in hospital but she's getting better.    5 Please close the window. I'm getting cold.

- 43.3 2 a doctor  
3 a drink  
4 a pen / pencil and paper  
5 a newspaper  
6 a taxi / a bus / a train  
7 a job  
8 an umbrella / a raincoat

- 43.4 2 gets to    3 get to    4 gets (back)    5 get back / home

43.5 *Possible answers:*

- 1 In Britain, people usually get married when they are 20 to 30 years old.  
2 People usually get married at the weekend, mostly on Saturday. April, May and June are very popular months (spring and summer).  
3 I get home at about 5 o'clock. I get there by car.

### Unit 44

- 44.1 2 d    3 g    4 f    5 b    6 h    7 e    8 a

- 44.2 2 off    3 on; up    4 off    5 off    6 off    7 on    8 on

- 44.3 2 He is putting on his shoes.    3 A plane is taking off.    4 She is turning on the oven.

- 44.4 2 took off    3 went on    4 went off    5 turned down

### Unit 45

- 45.1 2 She washes (the / her) clothes every Saturday.    4 He watches TV / television every evening.  
3 He cleans the house / his flat every weekend.      5 She goes for a walk every Sunday.

## 45.2 Possible questions:

- 2 How often do you go for a walk?
- 3 How do you go to work?
- 4 When do you have dinner?
- 5 How do you come home from work?
- 6 How often do you phone your best friend?
- 7 When do you clean your room?
- 8 What time do you have a shower?

## 45.3 Possible answers:

- 1 I usually wake up at 7 o'clock.
- 2 I go to the bathroom and have a shower.
- 3 I usually have tea and toast for breakfast.
- 4 I go to work by car.
- 5 I usually have a cup of coffee at 11 o'clock.
- 6 I usually come home at about 6 pm.
- 7 I usually make dinner at 7 o'clock.
- 8 In the evenings I normally watch TV or go for a walk.
- 9 Sometimes I write a letter or email or listen to the radio.
- 10 I usually go to bed at 11 o'clock.

## Unit 46

46.1 2 told 3 said 4 tell; said 5 said 6 told

- 46.2 2 How do you say 'tree' in German?  
3 Excuse me, can you tell me the time?  
4 I just want to say goodbye (to you).  
5 Can you tell me when the exam is?  
6 Can you answer the phone, please? / Can you tell them I'm busy / I'm cooking?

- 46.3 2 h answer the door  
3 g ask for the bill  
4 a reply to a letter  
5 f tell someone a joke  
6 e talk to a friend  
7 b ask someone to help you  
8 c speak Japanese

We can also say 'answer a letter', but not 'reply to the door'!

- 46.4 2 Can we have the bill, please?  
3 Happy New Year!  
4 Tell me a story before I go to sleep. Please!

## Unit 47

47.1 2 danced 4 run 6 fell 8 walk  
3 swims 5 climbing 7 jumped; swam

- 47.2 2 drives 6 ride  
3 takes 7 ride  
4 drives 8 take  
5 take; go by

Note: You can also use 'go by' with all these forms of transport (but without 'the' or 'a'), i.e. you can go to work by bicycle, go home by underground / taxi, etc.

## 47.3 Possible answers:

salt, pepper, bread, butter, water, sauce, salad

- 47.4** 2 Maria drove her grandmother to the city yesterday.  
 3 Bill flew to Madrid yesterday.  
 4 I took a taxi home from the station yesterday.  
 5 Jane fell when she rode her bike yesterday.  
 6 Paul missed the 7.30 bus to school yesterday.  
 7 The taxi driver helped the old lady to carry her luggage to the train yesterday.  
 8 Susie danced very well yesterday.

**47.5** Possible answers:

- 2 I ride my bike once a week.  
 3 I swim in the sea once a year. I swim in a pool once a week.  
 4 I go somewhere by plane once a year.  
 5 I drive my car every day.  
 6 I go dancing once a week.  
 7 I never go climbing.  
 8 I take a taxi once or twice a year.

**Unit 48**

**48.1** Check your work with your teacher if you are not sure about your answers.

**48.2**

noun	verb	adjective
book	speak	good
word	have	new
house	write	right
man	say	blue

**48.3** Possible answers:

on, at, by, to, for, with, below

- 48.4** 2 question                      5 question  
 3 phrase                            6 sentence  
 4 sentence

- 48.5** 2 man    6 No, it's an adjective. The adverb is badly.  
 3 No, it's a preposition.                      7 They are both pronouns.  
 4 No, it's a noun.                                8 because  
 5 No, it's a sentence.

- 48.6** Nouns:        cat, garden, day, milk  
 Adjective:    fresh  
 Adverb:       happily  
 Preposition: in  
 Pronoun:     She

**Unit 49**

- 49.1** 2 and                      4 so                      6 if                      8 when  
 3 before                5 because            7 or



**49.2** *Possible sentences:*

Mary agreed to marry Sanjay after he moved to London. / Mary agreed to marry Sanjay after they decided to set up a business together.

Mary agreed to marry Sanjay and they had two sons. / Mary agreed to marry Sanjay and they decided to set up a business together.

Mary agreed to marry Sanjay because she loved him. / Mary agreed to marry Sanjay because he was a pop star.

Mary agreed to marry Sanjay before he moved to London. / Mary agreed to marry Sanjay before they decided to set up a business together.

Mary will marry Sanjay because she loves him.

Mary will marry Sanjay before he moves to London.

Mary will marry Sanjay but she doesn't love him.

Mary agreed to marry Sanjay if he moved to London.

Mary will marry Sanjay or she won't marry anyone.

Mary agreed to marry Sanjay so he moved to London.

Mary will marry Sanjay when he moves to London.

**49.3** 2 as well / also (too is also possible but it is better to use a different word as too is already in the sentence)

3 than

4 like

5 only

**49.4** *Possible answers:*

I only play tennis in the summer.

My sister plays the piano better than I do.

My brother swims like a fish.

I like listening to music and I like reading also.

I like going skiing too.

I often go skiing with the children and sometimes my husband comes as well.

**49.5** *Possible answers:*

1 I'm learning English because I enjoy it.

2 I'll learn more English if I do all the exercises in this book.

3 I'm learning English and I'm also studying Spanish.

4 I started learning English when I was ten.

5 I can speak some English, so it's OK on holiday in the UK.

6 I'll learn more English but sometimes it's difficult.

## Unit 50

**50.1** 2 a century 3 a fortnight 4 an hour 5 a week

**50.2** Thirty days has September,  
April, June and November.  
All the rest have thirty-one.  
Except for February  
Which has twenty-eight days  
And twenty-nine in each leap year.

This is a traditional rhyme which people use to help them remember the number of days of the month. It means that:

September, April, June and November have 30 days. The other months have 31 days except for February which has 28 days and 29 days in a leap year.

- 50.3** 2 August      5 Wednesday      8 Friday      11 Tuesday  
3 October      6 January      9 February      12 November  
4 Saturday      7 April      10 September

- 50.4** 2 T F S (the first letters of the days of the week)  
3 A S O N D (the first letters of the months)

**50.5** I'm going to a party on Saturday for Jill's birthday. Her birthday is on Thursday but she wanted to have the party at the weekend. She's having a barbecue. I think June is a good month to have a birthday because of the weather. I love going to barbecues in the summer. My birthday is in winter and it's too cold to eat outside!

- 50.6** 1 15      2 Tuesday (or Wednesday)      3 300      4 July      5 120  
6-12 It is not possible to give answers to questions 6 to 12. Check with your teacher if you are not sure if your answers are correct or not.

### Unit 51

- 51.1** 2 for      3 from      4 to      5 At      6 for
- 51.2** 2 the 22nd century – the future      4 the 21st century – the present  
3 the 18th century – the past      5 the 20th century – the past

**51.3** Possible answers:

- 2 I sometimes go to school by bus. I usually go by car.  
3 I often watch TV.  
4 I never drink milk. I usually drink coffee.  
5 I never wear a hat.  
6 I often eat chocolate.  
7 I sometimes go to bed at 10. I usually go to bed at 11.  
8 I sometimes go to the theatre.

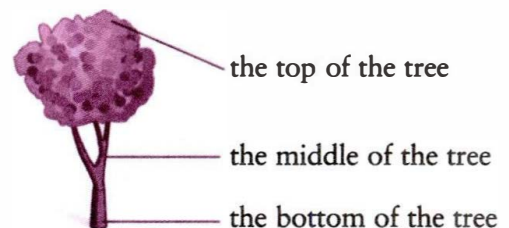
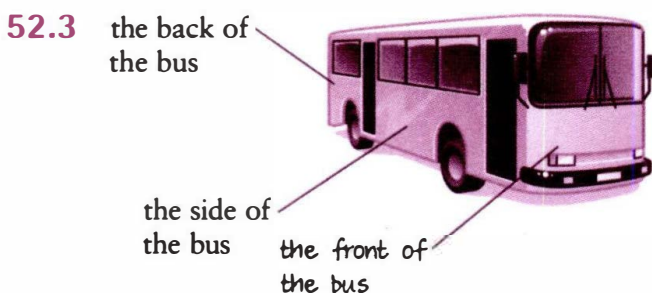
- 51.4** 2 Probably a week ago      3 In a few minutes      4 4 o'clock

**51.5** John plays tennis twice a week. He practises the piano once a week and he has a business meeting in Germany once a month.  
Bettina and Amy play tennis three times a week. They practise the piano twice a day. They go to Germany for a business meeting six times a year. *or* They have a business meeting in Germany six times a year.

### Unit 52

- 52.1** 2 here      3 there      4 everywhere      5 there      6 back

- 52.2** 2 at      3 on      4 at      5 on      6 in; in



- 52.4** 2 out      3 away      4 away; abroad

**52.5** Possible answers:

- 1 I'm studying English in the UK.
- 2 Yes, I'm going to Dublin and to the US.
- 3 At the moment I have a pen in my right hand.
- 4 The Answer key is at the end of this book.
- 5 Unit 3 is at the beginning of this book (Unit 3 out of 60 units). (Note: we say *at*.)
- 6 Unit 36 is in the middle of this book (Unit 36 out of 60 units). (Note: we say *in*.)

**Unit 53**

**53.1** 2 badly 3 loudly 4 fast [NOT ~~fastly~~] 5 quietly 6 well

**53.2** 2 slow 3 good 4 in 5 right 6 badly 7 quietly 8 the

**53.3** suddenly ✗ sadly ✓ strangely ✓ quickly ✗ easily ✓  
*Suddenly* means very quickly, when you are not expecting it.  
*Quickly* is similar to 'fast' when fast is an adverb, not when it is an adjective.

**53.4** Possible answers:

- 2 My brother speaks German badly.
- 3 I usually eat too fast.
- 4 My dog is old and very slow.
- 5 My voice is quiet.
- 6 I like to sing loudly.
- 7 My Mum always behaves in a friendly way.
- 8 I like to do things the right way.

**Unit 54**

**54.1** 2 milk; butter 3 advice 4 air 5 work 6 traffic

**54.2** 2 useful information 4 modern furniture 6 cold water  
3 bad news 5 brown bread 7 space travel

**54.3** 2 is / was 3 is / was 4 is; was 5 is / was 6 is / was

- 54.4**
- 2 Where can I get some information about your country?
  - 3 Let me give you some advice.
  - 4 Cook this spaghetti for ten minutes.
  - 5 Can I have some bread, please?
  - 6 We need to buy some new furniture.
  - 7 The east of the country usually has better weather than the west. [NOT a better weather]
  - 8 I must find some new accommodation soon.

**Unit 55**

**55.1** Possible answers:

- 2 very bad / terrible / awful / dreadful
- 3 terrible / awful / dreadful
- 4 excellent / great / wonderful
- 5 awful / horrible
- 6 wonderful / lovely
- 7 bad
- 8 wonderful / lovely

**55.2** Possible answers:

- 2 Oh, how awful!
- 3 That's a lovely idea! / Yes, great!
- 4 Yes, there's the Ritz. It's an excellent restaurant.
- 5 They're wonderful!
- 6 Yes, that's perfect!

**55.3** 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 b

55.4

good	bad
brilliant	dreadful
marvellous	nasty
fine	

55.5 *Possible answers:*

brilliant idea / scientist      nasty surprise / smell  
 marvellous weather / food      fine weather / day

### Unit 56

56.1 2 horrible    3 kind    4 naughty    5 selfish

56.2 2 wonderful    3 lovely    4 difficult    5 nice    6 easy-going    7 horrible

56.3 *Your own answers*

56.4 2 of    3 to    4 of

### Unit 57

57.1 2 d This bicycle belongs to the hotel.  
 3 h The children thanked their aunt for the money.  
 4 g Sally is listening to her MP3 player.  
 5 a He apologised for his mistake.  
 6 e Let me pay for our tickets.  
 7 b Hamid is thinking about the holidays.  
 8 f Over 100 people came to the football match.

57.2 2 after people    4 forward to my party    6 for a new one    8 after the children  
 3 for them    5 at me    7 forward to it

57.3 2 at    3 to    4 in    5 to    6 of    7 about    8 to

57.4 3 Hiroshi wasn't used to eating British food.    5 He was used to expensive shops.  
 4 He was used to traffic jams.    6 He wasn't used to British money.

57.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I was good at languages and bad at PE.    5 I like listening to folk music.  
 2 I usually ask for a black coffee.    6 I am looking forward to my holiday.  
 3 I am proud of my family.    7 I belong to a tennis club.  
 4 I am afraid of going to the dentist.    8 I am used to eating lots of different kinds of food.

### Unit 58

58.1 2 rewrite / redo    3 informal    4 unhappy    5 half-price    6 unsafe

58.2 *Possible answers:*

2 An ex-president is giving a lecture here tomorrow.    4 It's impossible to read his handwriting.  
 3 This work is not very good. Please redo it.    5 Pre-school children learn by playing.

- 58.3** 2 nerves before an exam  
 3 a wrong answer, an answer that is not correct  
 4 a book that has not been read  
 5 to tell a story again  
 6 a brother with one parent the same (for example, perhaps with the same mother but not the same father)  
 7 a letter that is not finished  
 8 a drink with no alcohol in it (for example, fruit juice, cola)  
 9 to read a book again  
 10 to send an email again

- 58.4** 2 uncomfortable    3 impolite    4 unpleasant    5 unattractive

### Follow-up

*Possible answers:*

in: This is an incomplete answer – you need to finish it.

im: I thought the question he asked me was very impolite.

non: I want to buy a non-stick pan.

pre: Would you like to have a pre-lunch drink?

re: We're going to repaint this room next week.

un: My daughter's room is always very untidy.

## Unit 59

- 59.1** 2 instructor    3 swimmer    4 happily    5 calculator    6 useful

- 59.2** *Possible answers:*

You may be able to think of some other possible combinations.

2 fast worker / car / swimmer

3 beautiful beach / weather / car / book / smile / picture

4 sandy beach

5 sunny weather / smile

6 hard worker

7 useful idea / book

8 endless fun

9 useless idea / book (*Note:* You can also say 'I'm a useless swimmer'. It is typical of spoken rather than written English and means 'I am no good at swimming'.)

- 59.3** 2 badly    3 helpful    4 kindness    5 careless    6 windy    7 easily    8 builder

- 59.4** 2 a person who travels                      7 the opposite of doing something well  
 3 the opposite of fast                          8 a thing for opening tins  
 4 with lots of hope                              9 a person who plays football  
 5 weather when it is raining                  10 weather when there is a lot of snow  
 6 it doesn't hurt

## Unit 60

- 60.1** 2 lose    3 felt    4 cooker    5 fell    6 quite    7 loose    8 cook

- 60.2** 2 loose – *juice*    3 quite – *right*    4 quiet – *higher*

- 60.3** 2 He/She checks it.                              4 Good afternoon.                              6 Can you lend me £1?  
 3 Can I borrow your camera?                  5 They wait for the bus.                              7 Please be quiet.

- 60.4** *Possible answers:*

1 I am expecting my brother at 5.30. (= He said he would come at 5.30.)

2 I hope to go on holiday to Spain. (= I really want to go to Spain.)

3 Sometimes I borrow books and CDs.

4 Yes, but only to my best friend!

# Phonemic symbols

## Vowel sounds

Symbol	Examples
/i:/	sleep me
/i/	happy recipe
/ɪ/	pin dinner
/ʊ/	foot could pull
/u:/	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ə/	arrive father colour
/ɜ:/	turn bird work
/ɔ:/	sort thought walk
/æ/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ɑ:/	part heart laugh
/eɪ/	name late aim
/aɪ/	my idea time
/ɔɪ/	boy noise
/eə/	pair where bear
/ɪə/	hear beer
/əʊ/	go home show
/aʊ/	out cow
/ʊə/	pure fewer

## Consonant sounds

Symbol	Examples
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/g/	go guarantee
/tʃ/	catch church
/dʒ/	age lounge
/f/	for cough photograph
/v/	love vehicle
/θ/	thick path
/ð/	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo houses
/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/ʒ/	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now know
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

This shows that the next syllable is the one with the stress.

This is used when some longer words have a second stress, less strong than on the main stressed syllable.

# Index

The numbers in the Index are Unit numbers not page numbers. The pronunciation provided is for standard British English.

- about ə'baʊt 23  
 abroad ə'brɔ:d 52  
 absolutely ,æbsə'lu:tli 9  
 accommodation  
 ə,kɒmə'deɪʃən 54  
 action 'æksjən 22  
 actually 'æktʃuəli 9  
 address ə'dres 16  
 adjective 'ædʒɪktɪv 48  
 adverb 'ædvɜ:b 48  
 advert 'ædvɜ:t 33  
 advertisement  
 əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt 33  
 advice əd'vaɪs 54  
 aeroplane 'eərəpleɪn 30  
 afraid of ə'freɪd əv 57  
 Africa 'æfrɪkə 25  
 after 'ɑ:ftə 49  
 afternoon ,ɑ:ftə'nu:n 50,  
 60  
 age eɪdʒ 5  
 ago ə'gəʊ 51  
 agree ə'gri: 9  
 air eə 54  
 air pollution  
 eə pə'lu:ʃən 35  
 alarm clock ə'lɑ:m klɒk 12  
 alcohol 'ælkəhɒl 20  
 also 'ɔ:lsoʊ 49  
 always 'ɔ:lweɪz 51  
 America ə'merɪkə 25  
 American ə'merɪkən 25  
 American football  
 ə'merɪkən 'fʊtbɔ:l 21  
 and ænd 49  
 angry 'æŋgri 7  
 animal 'ænɪməl 29  
 answer 'ɑ:nsə 46, 48  
 Antarctica ən'tɑ:ktɪkə 25  
 anyway 'eniweɪ 9  
 apologise ə'pɒlədʒaɪz 34  
 apologise for ə'pɒlədʒaɪz  
 fɔ: 57  
 apple 'æpəl 10, 54  
 apple pie 'æpəl paɪ 20  
 April 'eɪprəl 50  
 Arabic 'ærəbɪk 25  
 Argentina ,ɑ:dʒən'ti:nə 25  
 Argentinian ,ɑ:dʒən'tɪniən  
 25  
 arm ɑ:m 3  
 armchair 'ɑ:mtʃeə 13  
 around ə'raʊnd 9  
 arrest ə'rest 32  
 arrive ə'raɪv 30  
 arrive at ə'raɪv æt 47  
 arrive in ə'raɪv ɪn 47  
 art ɑ:t 15  
 as well æz wel 49  
 Asia 'eɪzə 25  
 ask ɑ:sk 46  
 ask (someone) the time  
 ɑ:sk ðə taɪm 46  
 ask (someone) the way  
 ɑ:sk ðə weɪ 46  
 ask for ɑ:sk fɔ: 46, 57  
 ask someone to do  
 something ɑ:sk 'sʌmwʌn  
 tu: du: 'sʌmθɪŋ 46  
 aspirin 'æsprɪn 6  
 asthma 'æstmə 6  
 at æt 52  
 at home æt həʊm 52  
 at the moment æt ðə  
 'mʌmənt 51  
 attack ə'tæk 32  
 August 'ɔ:gəst 50  
 aunt ɑ:nt 1  
 Australasia ,ɒstrə'leɪzə 25  
 Australia ɒs'treɪliə 25  
 Australian ɒs'treɪliən 25  
 autumn 'ɔ:təm 50  
 average-looking 'ævri:dʒ  
 'lʊkɪŋ 5  
 away ə'weɪ 52  
 awful 'ɔ:fəl 55  
 baby 'beɪbi 2  
 back bæk 3, 52  
 bacon 'beɪkən 29  
 bad bæd 53, 55, 56  
 bad at bæd æt 57  
 bad mood bæd mu:d 34  
 badly 'bædli 53  
 badminton 'bædmɪntən 21  
 bag bæɡ 4, 18  
 baker(s) 'beɪkə 18  
 ball game bɔ:l geɪm 21  
 banana bə'nɑ:nə 10  
 band bænd 24  
 bank bæŋk 27  
 bank clerk bæŋk klerk 14  
 bank holiday bæŋk 'hɒlədeɪ  
 31  
 bar bɑ: 20  
 baseball 'beɪsbɔ:l 21  
 basement 'beɪsmənt 18  
 basin 'beɪsɪn 12  
 basketball 'bɑ:skɪtbɔ:l 21  
 bathroom 'bɑ:θrʊm 12, 19  
 be born bi: bɔ:n 2  
 be careful bi: 'keəfəl 9  
 be used to bi: ju:zt tə 57  
 beans bi:nz 10, 20  
 beard brɪd 5  
 beautiful 'bjʊ:tɪfəl 5, 59  
 beauty 'bjʊ:ti 18  
 beauty salon 'bjʊ:ti 'sælɒn  
 14  
 because bi:'kɔz 49  
 bed bed 12  
 bedroom 'bedrʊm 12  
 bedside lamp 'bedsaɪd  
 læmp 12  
 bedside table 'bedsaɪd  
 'teɪbəl 12  
 beef bi:f 29  
 beer biə 10  
 before bi:'fɔ: 49  
 beginning bi:'ɡɪnɪŋ 52  
 belong to bi:'lɒŋ tə 57  
 belt belt 4  
 bike baɪk 30  
 bill bɪl 19  
 bin bɪn 11  
 biology baɪ'ɒlədʒi 15  
 bird bɜ:d 29  
 birth bɜ:θ 2  
 birthday 'bɜ:θdeɪ 2  
 Bless you bles ju: 8  
 blonde blɒnd 5  
 blood blʌd 3  
 blue blu: 5  
 board bɔ:d 15  
 board pen bɔ:d pen 15  
 board rubber 'bɔ:d 'rʌbə  
 155

- boarding card 'bɔ:dɪŋ  
     kɑ:d 30  
 boat bəʊt 30  
 body 'bɒdi 3  
 bonfire 'bɒnfara 31  
 Bonfire Night 'bɒnfara naɪt  
     31  
 book bu:k 13, 23, 30  
 bookshelf (bookshelves)  
     'bʊkʃelf 13  
 bookshop 'bʊkʃɒp 18  
 boots bu:ts 4  
 boring 'bɔ:riŋ 22  
 born bɔ:n 2  
 borrow 'bɒrəʊ 60  
 bottom 'bɒtəm 52  
 bowl bəʊl 11  
 brain breɪn 3  
 Brazil brə'zɪl 25  
 bread bred 10, 54  
 break into breɪk 'ɪntə 32  
 breakfast 'brekfəst 19  
 bride braɪd 2  
 bridegroom 'braɪdgrʊm 2  
 bring brɪŋ 42  
 bring back brɪŋ bæ:k 42  
 British 'brɪtɪʃ 25  
 broken 'brəʊkən 34  
 brother 'brʌðə 1  
 brown braʊn 5  
 burger 'bɜ:gə 20  
 burglar 'bɜ:glə 32  
 burglary 'bɜ:gləri 32  
 bus bʌs 27, 30  
 bus station bʌs 'steɪʃən 27  
 but bʌt 49  
 butcher('s) 'bʊtʃə 18  
 butter 'bʌtə 54  
 by bus baɪ bʌs 17, 45  
 by car baɪ kɑ: 17, 45  
 by ferry baɪ 'feri 17  
 by plane baɪ pleɪn 17  
 by train baɪ treɪn 17, 45  
 café 'kæfeɪ 20  
 calculator 'kælkjələteɪə 59  
 calf kɑ:f 29  
 call kɔ:l 16  
 call a friend kɔ:l ə frend  
     45  
 call after kɔ:l 'ɑ:ftə 2  
 call back kɔ:l bæ:k 16  
 camera 'kæmərə 17  
 camping 'kæmpɪŋ 17  
 Can I help with ...? kən aɪ  
     help wɪð 11  
 Can you tell me the way ...?  
     kən ju: tel mi: ðə weɪ 27  
 can't stand kənt stænd 24  
 Canada 'kænədə 25  
 Canadian kə'neɪdɪən 25  
 cancer 'kænsə 6  
 car kɑ: 17, 27, 30  
 car crash kɑ: kræʃ 35  
 car park kɑ: pɑ:k 27  
 car theft kɑ: θeft 32  
 car thief kɑ: θi:f 32  
 carpet 'kɑ:pɪt 13  
 carrier bag 'kæriə bæɡ 18  
 carrot(s) 'kærət 10  
 carry 'kæri 4, 47  
 cartoon kɑ:'tu:n 33  
 cash kæʃ 18  
 cash desk kæʃ desk 18  
 cash machine 'kæʃ mə'ʃi:n  
     27  
 cassette kə'set 15  
 cat kæt 29  
 catch kætʃ 47  
 CD ,si:'di: 23  
 CD-ROM ,si:di:'rɒm 16  
 cello 'tʃeləʊ 24  
 century 'senʃəri 50  
 chair tʃeə  
 change tʃeɪndʒ 18, 19, 30,  
     33  
 change money tʃeɪndʒ  
     'mʌni 27  
 channel 'tʃænəl 33  
 chat tʃæt 23  
 check tʃek 19, 30, 60  
 check in tʃek ɪn 30  
 check in online tʃek ɪn  
     ,ɒn'laɪn 30  
 check out tʃek aʊt 19  
 Cheers tʃiəz 8  
 cheese tʃi:z 36  
 chemist('s) 'kemɪst 18  
 chemistry 'kemɪstri 15  
 cheque tʃek 18  
 chest tʃest 3  
 chest of drawers tʃest əv  
     drɔ:z 12  
 chick tʃɪk 29  
 chicken 'tʃɪkɪn 29  
 chicken tikka masala 'tʃɪkɪn  
     'tɪkə mə'sɑ:lə 31  
 children 'tʃɪldrən 1  
 children's department  
     'tʃɪldrənz dɪ'pɑ:tmənt 18  
 China 'tʃaɪnə 25  
 Chinese tʃaɪ'ni:z 25  
 chips tʃɪps 10  
 chocolate 'tʃɒklət 20  
 cholera 'kɒləərə 6  
 chopsticks 'tʃɒpstɪks 11  
 Christmas 'krɪsməs 31  
 Christmas tree 'krɪsməs  
     tri: 31  
 cinema 'sɪnəmə 22  
 clarinet ,klærɪ'net 24  
 classical music 'klæsɪkəl  
     'mju:zɪk 24  
 clean kli:n 12  
 clean the house kli:n ðə  
     haus 45  
 clean your teeth kli:n jɔ:  
     ti:θ 12  
 climb klaɪm 47  
 close kləʊz 13  
 closed kləʊzd 18  
 cloth klɒθ 11  
 clothes kləʊðz 4  
 cloud klaʊd 26  
 cloudy 'klaʊdi 26  
 coach kəʊtʃ 17  
 coach tour kəʊtʃ tuə 17  
 coat kəʊt 4  
 code kəʊd 19  
 coffee 'kɒfi 10, 36, 54  
 coffee machine 'kɒfi mə'ʃi:n  
     34  
 coffee maker 'kɒfi 'meɪkə  
     11  
 coffee table 'kɒfi 'teɪbəl 13  
 cold kəʊld 6, 7, 26  
 Colombian kə'lɒmbɪən 25  
 colour 'kɒlə 18  
 comb kəʊm 12  
 come kʌm 23, 40  
 come along kʌm ə'lɒŋ 40  
 come and see me kʌm ənd  
     si: mi: 40  
 come back kʌm bæ:k 40  
 come back from kʌm bæ:k  
     frɒm 40  
 come from kʌm frɒm 40  
 come home kʌm həʊm 40,  
     45  
 come in kʌm ɪn 40  
 come into kʌm 'ɪntə 40  
 come on kʌm ɒn 44  
 come out kʌm aʊt 40  
 come to kʌm tə 57  
 comedy 'kɒmədi 22



- comic 'kɒmɪk 23  
 computer kəm'pjʊ:tə 15, 16, 33, 34  
 computer game kəm'pjʊ:tə geɪm 23  
 concert 'kɒnsət 24  
 congratulations kən,grætʃu'leɪʃənz 8, 46  
 conjunction kən'dʒʌŋkʃən 48  
 conservation area ,kɒnsə'veɪʃən 'eəriə 28  
 continent 'kɒntɪnənt 25  
 control kən'trəʊl 60  
 cook kʊk 11, 60  
 cooker 'kʊkə 11, 59, 60  
 cooking 'kʊkɪŋ 23  
 cost kɒst 18  
 cottage 'kɒtɪdʒ 28  
 Could I have the bill? kʊd aɪ hæv ðə bɪl 20  
 countable 'kaʊntəbəl 54  
 country 'kʌntri 25, 28  
 country road 'kʌntri rəʊd 28  
 countryside 'kʌntrɪsaɪd 28  
 course kɔ:s 20  
 court kɔ:t 21, 32  
 cousin 'kʌzən 1  
 cow kaʊ 29  
 crash kræʃ 34  
 credit card 'kredɪt kɑ:d 18  
 crime kraɪm 32  
 criminal 'krɪmɪnəl 32  
 crowded 'kraʊdɪd 35  
 cup kʌp 11  
 cupboard 'kʌbəd 11  
 currency 'kʌrənsi 17  
 curry 'kʌri 20, 31  
 curtain(s) 'kɜ:tən 13  
 customs 'kʌstəmz 30  
 cut kʌt 34  
 dance dɑ:ns 47  
 dark dɑ:k 5  
 date deɪt 16  
 daughter 'dɔ:tə 1  
 day deɪ 50  
 dead ded 2  
 death deθ 2  
 December dɪ'sembə 50  
 degree dɪ'gri: 15  
 degrees dɪ'gri:z 26  
 delicious dɪ'lɪʃəs 20  
 dentist 'dentɪst 6  
 depart dɪ'pɑ:t 30  
 department store dɪ'pɑ:tmənt stɔ: 18  
 desk desk 15  
 dessert dɪ'zɜ:t 20  
 dialogue 'daɪələʒ 48  
 die daɪ 2, 34  
 diet daɪət 6  
 difficult 'dɪfɪkəlt 56  
 dinner 'dɪnə 23  
 direct dɪ'rekt 30  
 director dɪ'rektə 22  
 disaster dɪ'zɑ:stə 35  
 dishwasher 'dɪʃ,wɒʃə 11  
 divorced dɪ'vɔ:st 2  
 do du: 14, 21, 23, 38  
 do a course du: ə kɔ:s 15  
 do an exam du: æn ɪg'zæm 15  
 do business with du: 'bɪznɪs wɪð 38  
 do homework du: 'həʊmwɜ:k 15, 38  
 do some exercise(s) du: sʌm 'eksəsaɪz 38  
 do the gardening du: ðə 'gɑ:dənɪŋ 38  
 do the housework du: ðə 'haʊswɜ:k 38  
 do the washing du: ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ 38  
 do the washing-up du: ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ ʌp 38  
 Do you come from ...? du: ju: kʌm frɒm 1  
 Do you have any ...? du: ju: hæv 'eni 29  
 Do you play ...? du: ju: pleɪ 21  
 do your best du: jɔ: best 38  
 doctor 'dɒktə 6, 14  
 documentary ,dɒkjə'mentəri 33  
 dog dɒg 29  
 double room 'dʌbəl ru:m 19  
 download ,daʊn'ləʊd 23, 24  
 downstairs ,daʊn'steəz 12  
 drawers draʊz 12  
 drawing pin 'draʊ:ɪŋ pɪn 15  
 dreadful 'dredfəl 55  
 dress dres 4  
 dressing table 'dresɪŋ 'teɪbəl 12  
 drink drɪŋk 10, 20, 36  
 drive draɪv 47  
 drug dealer drʌg 'di:lə 32  
 drug dealing drʌg 'di:lɪŋ 32  
 drugs drʌgz 32  
 drums drʌmz 24  
 dry draɪ 11, 26  
 DVD ,di:vi:'di: 22, 23  
 DVD player ,di:vi:'di: 'pleɪə 15  
 ear ɪə 3  
 earthquake 'ɜ:θkweɪk 35  
 Easter 'i:stə 31  
 Easter eggs 'i:stər egz 31  
 easy-going 'i:zi 'gəʊɪŋ 56  
 egg eg 29  
 Egypt 'i:dʒɪpt 25  
 Egyptian 'i:dʒɪpʃən 25  
 elderly 'eldəli 5  
 electricals 'ɪlektɪkəlz 18  
 elephant 'elɪfənt 29  
 else els 9  
 email 'i:meɪl 16  
 end end 52  
 endless 'endləs 59  
 engineer ,endʒɪ'nɪə 14  
 English 'ɪŋɡlɪʃ 15, 25  
 enjoy ɪn'dʒɔɪ 17, 22  
 entrance 'entrəns 27  
 envelope 'envələʊp 16  
 Europe 'jʊərəp 25  
 even 'i:vən 49  
 evening 'i:vnɪŋ 50, 60  
 every 'evri 12  
 everywhere 'evrɪweə 52  
 exam ɪg'zæm 15  
 excellent 'eksələnt 55  
 exchange ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ 19  
 excuse me ɪk'skju:s mi: 8, 27  
 exercise 'eksəsaɪz 6  
 exit 'eksɪt 27  
 expect ɪk'spekt 60  
 ex-president eks 'prezɪdənt 58  
 ex-wife eks waɪf 58  
 eye aɪ 3  
 face feɪs 3, 5  
 factory 'fæktəri 14  
 fail an exam feɪl ən ɪg'zæm 15  
 fair feə 5  
 fall fɔ:l 47, 60

- fall asleep fɔ:l ə'sli:p 12  
 family 'fæmli 1  
 farm fɑ:m 28  
 farm animal fɑ:m 'æniməl 29  
 farmer 'fɑ:mə 14, 28  
 fast fɑ:st 53  
 fast food fɑ:st fu:d 10  
 fast food restaurant fɑ:st fu:d 'restrɒn 20  
 fat fæt 5  
 father 'fɑ:ðə 1  
 favourite 'feivərɪt 21, 33  
 February 'februəri 50  
 feed fi:d 29  
 feel fi:l 6, 60  
 feelings 'fi:lɪŋz 7  
 feet fi:t 3  
 ferry 'feri 17  
 field 'fi:ld 28  
 fill in a form fil in ə fɔ:m 19  
 fill up with fil ʌp wɪð 30  
 film film 22  
 film star film stɑ: 22  
 fine faɪn 6, 32  
 finger 'fɪŋgə 3  
 Finnish 'fɪnɪʃ 25  
 fireworks 'faɪəwɜ:kz 31  
 first floor 'fɜ:st flɔ: 18  
 fish fɪʃ 10, 20, 29  
 fish and chips fɪʃ ənd tʃɪps 10, 20, 31  
 flight flɑ:t 17, 30  
 flight attendant flɑ:t ə'tendənt 30  
 flood flʌd 35  
 floor flɔ: 18  
 flute flu:t 24  
 flute-player flu:t 'plɛə 24  
 fly flɑɪ 17, 47  
 foal fəʊl 29  
 fog fɒg 26  
 foggy 'fɒgi 26  
 folk music fəʊk 'mju:zɪk 24  
 food fu:d 10, 7, 18  
 foot fʊt 3  
 football 'fʊtbɔ:l 21  
 football hooligan 'fʊtbɔ:l 'hu:lɪgən 32  
 football hooliganism 'fʊtbɔ:l 'hu:lɪgənɪzəm 32  
 forest 'fɒrɪst 28  
 forest fire 'fɒrɪst faɪə 35  
 fork fɔ:k 11  
 form fɔ:m 19  
 fortnight 'fɔ:tnaɪt 50  
 fourth fɔ:θ 18  
 freezer 'fri:zə 11  
 Friday 'fraɪdeɪ 50  
 fridge frɪdʒ 11  
 friend frend 23  
 friendly 'frendli 53  
 front frʌnt 52  
 fruit fru:t 10  
 fruit juice fru:t dʒu:s 10  
 fruit salad fru:t 'sæləd 20  
 frying pan 'fraɪɪŋ pæn 11  
 funeral 'fju:nərəl 2  
 furniture 'fɜ:nɪtʃə 18, 54  
 future 'fju:tʃə 51  
 game geɪm 36  
 gardening 'gɑ:dənɪŋ 23  
 garlic 'gɑ:lɪk 10  
 geography dʒi'ɒgrəfi 15  
 German 'dʒɜ:mən 25  
 Germany 'dʒɜ:məni 25  
 get get 43  
 get a degree get ə dɪ'grɪ: 15  
 get back get bæk 43  
 get dressed get drest 4  
 get home get həʊm 43  
 get married get 'mærid 2, 43  
 get off get ɒf 44  
 get on get ɒn 44  
 get to get tə 43  
 get undressed get ʌn'drest 4  
 get up get ʌp 12, 44, 45  
 gift shop gɪft ʃɒp 18  
 giraffe dʒɪ'rɑ:f 29  
 give gɪv 29  
 give a lift gɪv ə lift 30  
 glass glɑ:s 11  
 glasses 'glɑ:sɪz 4  
 global 'glɔ:bəl 35  
 gloves glʌvz 4  
 go gəʊ 12, 21, 22, 37, 40  
 go by gəʊ baɪ 37, 47  
 go dancing gəʊ 'dɑ:ntsɪŋ 37  
 go down gəʊ daʊn 37  
 go fishing gəʊ 'fɪʃɪŋ 37  
 go for a walk gəʊ fɔ:r ə wɔ:k 45  
 go in gəʊ ɪn 37  
 go into gəʊ 'ɪntə 37  
 go off gəʊ ɒf 44  
 go on gəʊ ɒn 44  
 go out of gəʊ aʊt ɒv 37  
 go shopping gəʊ 'ʃɒpɪŋ 37  
 go sightseeing gəʊ 'saɪtsi:ɪŋ 37  
 go skiing gəʊ 'ski:ɪŋ 37  
 go swimming gəʊ 'swɪmɪŋ 37  
 go through gəʊ θru: 30  
 go to bed gəʊ tə bed 45  
 go to the bathroom gəʊ tə ðə 'bɑ:θrʊm 45  
 go to work gəʊ tə wɜ:k 45  
 go up gəʊ ʌp 37  
 goat gəʊt 29  
 goatskin 'gəʊtskɪn 29  
 going to 'gəʊɪŋ tu: 37  
 good gud 53, 55, 56  
 good afternoon gud ,ɑ:ftə'nu:n 8  
 good at gud æt 57  
 good evening gud 'i:vnɪŋ 8  
 good for somebody gud fə 'sʌmbədi 6  
 good luck gud lʌk 8  
 good morning gud 'mɔ:nɪŋ 8  
 goodbye gud'baɪ 8, 46  
 good-looking ,gud'lʊkɪŋ 5  
 goodnight ,gud'nɑɪt 8  
 granddaughter 'græn,dɔ:tə 1  
 grandfather 'græn,fɑ:ðə 1  
 grandmother 'græn,mʌðə 1  
 grandparents 'græn,pɛərənts 1  
 grandson 'grænsʌn 1  
 grape(s) greɪp 10  
 great greɪt 55  
 green gri:n 5  
 green beans gri:n bi:nz 20  
 greetings 'gri:tɪŋz 8  
 groom gru:m 2  
 ground floor ,graʊnd flɔ: 18  
 grow flowers / vegetables grəʊ flauəz / 'vedʒtəbəlz 23  
 guilty 'gɪlti 32

- guitar *ɡɪ'ta:* 24  
hair *heə* 3, 5, 29  
hairbrush *'heəbrʌʃ* 12  
hairdresser(s) *'heə,dresə*  
14  
hairdryer *'heə,draɪə* 19  
half *ha:f* 58  
half-brother *'ha:f,bɾʌðə*  
58  
half-price *,ha:f'praɪs* 58  
Halloween *,hæləu'i:n* 31  
ham *hæm* 29  
hamburger *'hæm,bɜ:gə* 10  
hand *hænd* 3  
handbag *'hænbæg* 4  
happily *'hæpɪli* 59  
happiness *'hæpɪnəs* 59  
happy *'hæpi* 7, 56  
happy about *'hæpi ə'baʊt*  
7, 57  
Happy Birthday *'hæpi*  
*'bɜ:θdeɪ* 8, 46  
Happy Christmas *'hæpi*  
*'krɪsməs* 8  
happy for *'hæpi fɔ:* 7  
Happy New Year *'hæpi nju:*  
*ɹɪə* 8, 46  
hat *hæt* 4  
hate *heit* 7  
have *hæv* 12, 20, 23, 36  
have (your) hair cut *hæv*  
*heə kʌt* 36  
have a baby *hæv ə 'beɪbi* 2  
have a bad day *hæv ə bæd*  
*deɪ* 34  
have a cold *hæv ə kəʊld*  
36  
have a cup of tea (coffee)  
*hæv ə kʌp əv ti:* 20  
have a go *hæv ə gəʊ* 36  
have a good journey *hæv ə*  
*ɡʊd 'dʒɜ:nɪ* 36  
have a good time *hæv ə ɡʊd*  
*tɑɪm* 36  
have a great time *hæv ə*  
*ɡreɪt tɑɪm* 17  
have a headache *hæv ə .*  
*'hedɪk* 36  
have a healthy diet *hæv ə*  
*'helθi daɪət* 6  
have a heart attack *hæv ə*  
*hɑ:t ə'tæk* 6  
have a lesson *hæv ə*  
*'lesən* 36  
have a look *hæv ə lʊk* 36  
have a meal *hæv ə mi:l* 36  
have a meeting *hæv ə*  
*'mi:tɪŋ* 36  
have a moment *hæv ə*  
*'məʊmənt* 36  
have a party *hæv ə*  
*'pɑ:ti* 36  
have a picnic *hæv ə*  
*'pɪknɪk* 28  
have a row with *hæv ə rəʊ*  
*wɪð* 34  
have a shower *hæv ə*  
*'ʃaʊə* 45  
have a word with *hæv ə*  
*wɜ:d wɪð* 36  
have an exam *hæv ən*  
*ɪg'zæm* 36  
have breakfast *hæv*  
*'brekfəst* 36, 45  
have coffee *hæv 'kɒfi* 36  
have dinner *hæv 'dɪnə* 36  
have friends round *hæv*  
*frendz raʊnd* 23  
have got *hæv ɡɒt* 36  
have got ... on *hæv ɡɒt ɒn*  
4  
have lunch *hæv lʌnʃ* 36  
have the time *hæv ðə taɪm*  
36  
have to *hæv tu:* 36  
Have you got any ...? *hæv*  
*ju: ɡɒt 'eni* 1  
hay fever *heɪ 'fi:və* 6  
head *hed* 3, 5  
headache *'hedɪk* 6  
headphones *'hedfəʊnz* 23  
health *helθ* 6  
heart *hɑ:t* 3  
heart attack *hɑ:t ə'tæk* 6  
heavy *'hevi* 5  
height *haɪt* 5  
helicopter *'helɪkɒptə* 30  
hello *hel'əʊ* 8, 46  
hen *hen* 29  
here *hɪə* 52  
here is ... *hɪər ɪz* 19  
hi *haɪ* 8  
hi-fi *'haɪfaɪ* 13  
hill *hɪl* 28  
hip *hɪp* 3  
hire *haɪə* 30  
history *'hɪstri* 15  
hobby *'hɒbi* 23  
holiday *'hɒlədeɪ* 17  
home *həʊm* 12, 23, 34, 52  
homeless *'həʊmləs* 35  
homework *'həʊmwɜ:k* 15,  
36  
honeymoon *'hɒnɪmu:n* 2  
hooligan *'hu:lɪɡən* 32  
hope *həʊp* 7, 60  
horrible *'hɒrəbəl* 55, 56  
horror *'hɒrə* 22  
horse *hɔ:s* 29  
horse racing *'hɔ:s ,reɪsɪŋ*  
21  
hospital *'hɒspɪtəl* 14  
hot *hɒt* 7, 26  
hot dog *hɒt dɒɡ* 10  
hotel *həʊ'tel* 19  
hour *aʊə* 50  
Houses of Parliament  
*'haʊzɪz əv 'pɑ:ləmənt* 31  
How (awful) *haʊ* 55  
How about ...? *haʊ ə'baʊt*  
7, 9  
How are you? *haʊ ə ju:*  
6, 8  
How do I get to ...? *haʊ du:*  
*aɪ ɡet tə* 27  
How do you ...? *haʊ du:*  
*ju:* 45  
How do you say ...? *haʊ*  
*du: ju: seɪ* 46  
How long does it take ...?  
*haʊ lɒŋ dəz ɪt teɪk* 41  
How much ...? *haʊ mʌʃ*  
19  
How often do you ...? *haʊ*  
*'ɒfən də ju:* 45  
How would you like ...?  
*haʊ wʊd ju: laɪk* 20  
hungry *'hʌŋɡri* 7, 35  
hurricane *'hʌrɪkən* 26, 35  
hurry up *'hʌrɪ ʌp* 9  
husband *'hʌzbænd* 1  
I don't mind *aɪ dəʊnt*  
*maɪnd* 9  
I'd like ... *aɪd laɪk* 20  
I'll have ... *aɪl hæv* 20  
ice cream *,aɪs'kri:m* 36  
ICT (information  
communication  
technology) *,aɪsɪ:'ti:* 15  
if *ɪf* 49  
ill *ɪl* 2, 6, 7  
illness *'ɪlnəs* 6  
impossible *ɪm'pɒsəbəl* 58

in <i>in</i> 22, 47, 52	knife <i>naif</i> 11	magazine <i>ˌmæɡəˈziːn</i> 23, 33
in a bad mood <i>in ə bæd muːd</i> 34	lake <i>leɪk</i> 28	main course <i>meɪn kɔːs</i> 20
in a moment <i>in ə ˈməʊmənt</i> 51	lamb <i>læm</i> 29	make <i>meɪk</i> 12
in advance <i>in ədˈvɑːns</i> 30	lamp <i>læmp</i> 13	make a (phone) call <i>meɪk ə kɔːl</i> 16
India <i>ˈɪndiə</i> 25	land <i>lænd</i> 30	make a choice <i>meɪk ə tʃɔɪs</i> 39
Indian <i>ˈɪndiən</i> 25	laptop <i>ˈlæptɒp</i> 16	make a film <i>meɪk ə fɪlm</i> 39
informal <i>ɪnˈfɔːməl</i> 58	last <i>lɑːst</i> 51	make a mess <i>meɪk ə mes</i> 39
information <i>ˌɪnfəˈmeɪʃən</i> 27, 54	late for <i>leɪt fə</i> 34	make a mistake <i>meɪk ə mɪˈsteɪk</i> 39
innocent <i>ˈɪnəsənt</i> 32	law <i>lɔː</i> 32	make a noise <i>meɪk ə nɔɪz</i> 39
instructor <i>ɪnˈstrʌktə</i> 59	leap year <i>liːp jɪə</i> 50	make a photocopy <i>meɪk ə ˈfəʊtəˌkɒpi</i> 39
intelligent <i>ɪnˈtelɪdʒənt</i> 56	learn <i>lɜːn</i> 15, 24	make a video <i>meɪk ə ˈvɪdiəʊ</i> 39
interested in <i>ˈɪntrəstɪd ɪn</i> 57	leather <i>ˈleðə</i> 29	make an appointment <i>meɪk ən əˈpɔɪntmənt</i> 39
Internet <i>ˈɪntənət</i> 16, 23	leave <i>liːv</i> 30	make breakfast <i>meɪk ˈbrekfəst</i> 39
interview <i>ˈɪntəvjʊː</i> 33	left <i>left</i> 27, 52	make dinner <i>meɪk ˈdɪnə</i> 39, 45
Irish <i>ˈaɪrɪʃ</i> 25	leg <i>leg</i> 3	make hot chocolate <i>meɪk hɒt ˈtʃɒklət</i> 39
Is everything all right? <i>ɪz ˈevriθɪŋ ɔːl raɪt</i> 20	lend <i>lend</i> 60	make lunch <i>meɪk lʌnʃ</i> 39
it doesn't matter <i>ɪt dʌznt ˈmætə</i> 9	let's <i>lets</i> 9	make me (feel) <i>meɪk miː</i> 39
it takes (+ time) <i>ɪt teɪks</i> 41	letter <i>ˈletə</i> 16	make my bed <i>meɪk maɪ bed</i> 39
It's ... here <i>ɪts hɪə</i> 16	letter box <i>ˈletə bɒks</i> 16	make some coffee <i>meɪk səm ˈkɒfi</i> 39
It's a ... day <i>ɪts ə deɪ</i> 26	letters <i>ˈletəz</i> 16	make some tea <i>meɪk səm tiː</i> 39
it's up to you <i>ɪts ʌp tə juː</i> 9	librarian <i>laɪˈbreəriən</i> 14	malaria <i>məˈleəriə</i> 6
Italian <i>ɪˈtæliən</i> 25	library <i>ˈlaɪbrəri</i> 27	man-made <i>ˌmænˈmeɪd</i> 35
Italy <i>ˈɪtəli</i> 25	lift <i>lɪft</i> 19	manner <i>ˈmænə</i> 53
jacket <i>ˈdʒækɪt</i> 4	light <i>laɪt</i> 12, 13	map <i>mæp</i> 30
January <i>ˈdʒænjuəri</i> 50	light switch <i>laɪt swɪtʃ</i> 13	March <i>mɑːtʃ</i> 50
Japan <i>dʒəˈpæn</i> 25	lightning <i>ˈlaɪtnɪŋ</i> 26	marriage <i>ˈmæərɪdʒ</i> 2
jazz <i>dʒæz</i> 24	like <i>laɪk</i> 7, 21, 49	married <i>ˈmæərɪd</i> 2
jeans <i>dʒiːnz</i> 4	lion <i>laɪən</i> 29	maths <i>mæθs</i> 15
job <i>dʒɒb</i> 14	lip <i>lɪp</i> 3	May <i>meɪ</i> 50
journalist <i>ˈdʒɜːnəlɪst</i> 33	lipstick <i>ˈlɪpstɪk</i> 3	meal <i>miːl</i> 20
journey <i>ˈdʒɜːni</i> 30	listen (to) <i>ˈlɪsən</i> 13, 23, 24, 45	meat <i>miːt</i> 10, 29
judo <i>ˈdʒuːdɔʊ</i> 21	listen to <i>ˈlɪsən tə</i> 57	mechanic <i>mɪˈkænɪk</i> 14
July <i>dʒʊˈlaɪ</i> 50	litre <i>ˈlɪːtə</i> 54	media <i>ˈmiːdiə</i> 33
jump <i>dʒʌmp</i> 47	living room <i>ˈlɪvɪŋ ru:m</i> 13	medium <i>ˈmiːdiəm</i> 5, 20
jumper <i>ˈdʒʌmpə</i> 4	loaf <i>ləʊf</i> 54	memory stick <i>ˈmeməri stɪk</i> 16
June <i>dʒuːn</i> 50	local <i>ˈləʊkəl</i> 17	
karate <i>kəˈrɑːti</i> 21	long <i>lɒŋ</i> 5	
kayaking <i>ˈkaɪækɪŋ</i> 21	look after <i>lʊk ˈɑːftə</i> 57	
key <i>kiː</i> 19	look at <i>lʊk æt</i> 57	
keyboard <i>ˈkiːbɔːd</i> 16	look for <i>lʊk fɔː</i> 27, 34, 57	
kid <i>kɪd</i> 29	look forward to <i>lʊk ˈfɔːwəd tə</i> 57	
kilo <i>ˈkiːləʊ</i> 54	look like <i>lʊk laɪk</i> 5	
kind <i>kaind</i> 56	look out <i>lʊk aʊt</i> 9	
king <i>kɪŋ</i> 31	lose <i>luːz</i> 34, 60	
kitchen <i>ˈkɪtʃɪn</i> 11	loud <i>laʊd</i> 53	
kitchen roll <i>ˈkɪtʃɪn rɔʊl</i> 11	loudly <i>ˈlaʊdli</i> 53	
knee <i>niː</i> 3	love <i>lʌv</i> 7, 22	
	lovely <i>ˈlʌvli</i> 55, 56	
	luggage <i>ˈlʌɡɪdʒ</i> 17, 19, 30, 54	

- men's clothes **menz**  
**kləʊðz** 18
- mend **mend** 34
- menu **'menju:** 20
- Merry Christmas **'meri**  
**'krɪsməs** 8, 46
- message **'mesɪdʒ** 16
- microwave  
**'maɪkrəweɪv** 11
- middle **'mɪdəl** 52
- middle-aged **ˌmɪdəl'eɪdʒd** 5
- milk **mɪlk** 10, 29, 54
- mineral water **'mɪnərəl**  
**'wɔ:tə** 10
- mini-bar **'mɪni bɑ:** 19
- minus **'maɪnəs** 26
- minute **ˈmɪnɪt** 50
- mirror **'mɪrə** 12
- miss **mɪs** 47
- mixed **ˈmɪkst** 20
- mobile **'məʊbaɪl** 16
- mobile device **'məʊbaɪl**  
**dɪ'vaɪs** 16
- modern languages **'mɒdən**  
**'læŋgwɪdʒɪz** 15
- moment **'məʊmənt** 51
- Monday **'mʌndeɪ** 50
- money **'mʌni** 17, 19, 54
- monkey **'mʌŋki** 29
- month **mʌnθ** 50
- mood **mu:d** 34
- morning **'mɔ:nɪŋ** 33, 50
- Moroccan **mə'rɒkən** 25
- Morocco **mə'rɒkəʊ** 25
- mosquito **mɒs'ki:təʊ** 6
- mother **'mʌðə** 1
- motor racing **'məʊtə**  
**'reɪsɪŋ** 21
- motorbike **'məʊtəbaɪk** 30
- motorcycle **'məʊtəsaɪkəl**  
30
- mountain **'maʊntɪn** 28
- mouse **maʊs** 16
- moustache **mə'stɑ:f** 5
- mouth **maʊθ** 3
- move **mu:v** 47
- MP3 player **empi:'θri:**  
**'pleɪə** 23, 24
- mug **mʌg** 11, 32
- mugger **'mʌgə** 32
- mugging **'mʌgɪŋ** 32
- murder **'mɜ:də** 32
- murderer **'mɜ:dərə** 32
- mushroom(s) **'mʌʃrʊm** 10,  
20
- music **'mju:zɪk** 15, 24
- musical **'mju:zɪkəl** 22, 24
- musical instruments  
**'mju:zɪkəl**  
**'ɪntstrəmənts** 24
- musician **mju:'zɪʃən** 24
- nail **neɪl** 3
- national park **'næʃnəl pɑ:k**  
28
- natural disaster **'nætʃrəl**  
**dɪ'zɑ:stə** 35
- nature **'neɪtʃə** 28, 33
- naughty **'nɔ:ti** 56
- neck **nek** 3
- negative **'negətɪv** 56
- nephew **'nefju:** 1
- never **'nevə** 51
- new potato(es) **nju:**  
**pə'tetəʊ** 20
- New Year's Day **nju: jɪəz**  
**deɪ** 31
- New Year's Eve **nju: jɪəz**  
**i:v** 31
- New Zealand **ˌnju: 'zi:lənd**  
25
- news **nju:z** 33, 54
- newsagent(s) **'nju:z,eɪdʒənt**  
18
- newspaper **'nju:s,peɪpə** 23,  
33
- next **nekst** 51
- nice **nais** 55, 56
- niece **ni:s** 1
- night **naɪt** 60
- nightlife **'naɪtlaɪf** 17
- no smoking **nəʊ'sməʊkɪŋ**  
27
- non-smoking **nɒn'sməʊkɪŋ**  
58
- normally **'nɔ:məli** 12, 45
- nose **nəʊz** 3
- not too bad **nɒt tu: bæd** 8
- note **nəʊt** 18
- notebook **'nəʊtbʊk** 15
- nothing **'nʌθɪŋ** 23
- noticeboard **'nəʊtɪsbɔ:d**  
15
- noun **naʊn** 48
- novel **'nɒvəl** 23
- November **nə'vembə** 50
- now **nau** 51
- now and then **nau ənd ðen**  
51
- number **'nʌmbə** 27
- nurse **nɜ:s** 14
- nursery school **'nɜ:sri**  
**sku:l** 31
- o'clock **əʊ'klɒk** 51
- occasionally **ə'keɪzənli** 51
- October **ɒk'təʊbə** 50
- office **'ɒfɪs** 14
- often **'ɒfən** 51
- Oh dear **əʊ dɪə** 9
- OHP (overhead projector)  
**əʊertʃ'pi:** 15
- old **əʊld** 5
- on **ɒn** 52
- on strike **ɒn straɪk** 35
- on the left **ɒn ðə left** 52
- on the right **ɒn ðə raɪt** 52
- once **wʌns** 51
- onion **'ʌŋjən** 10
- online **ˌɒn'laɪn** 16, 23, 33
- online check-in **ˌɒn'laɪn tʃek**  
**ɪn** 30
- only **'əʊnli** 49
- only child **'əʊnli tʃaɪld** 1
- open **'əʊpən** 18
- opera **'ɒpərə** 24
- or **ɔ:** 49
- orange **'ɒrɪndʒ** 10
- orchestra **'ɔ:kɪstrə** 24
- order **'ɔ:də** 20
- out **aʊt** 52
- out of order **aʊt əv 'ɔ:də**  
27, 34
- outside line **ˌaʊt'saɪd laɪn**  
19
- oven **'ʌvən** 31
- over there **'əʊvə ðeə** 19
- overweight **'əʊvəweɪt** 5
- package holiday **'pækɪdʒ**  
**'hɒlədeɪ** 17
- pain **peɪn** 3
- pair of trousers / shorts /  
glasses **peər əv 'traʊzəz /**  
**ʃɔ:ts / 'glɑ:sɪz** 4
- Pakistan **ˌpɑ:kɪ'stɑ:n** 25
- Pakistani **ˌpɑ:kɪ'stɑ:ni** 25
- paper **'peɪpə** 33
- paragraph **'pærəgrɑ:f** 48
- parents **'peərənts** 1
- park **pɑ:k** 27
- parrot **'pærət** 29
- pass **pɑ:s** 13, 47
- pass an exam **pɑ:s ən**  
**ɪg'zæm** 15
- passport **'pɑ:spɔ:t** 17, 30
- past **pɑ:st** 51

- pasta 'pæstə 10  
 path pɑ:θ 28  
 pay peɪ 18, 32  
 pay for peɪ fɔ: 57  
 PE (physical education) 'pi:i 15  
 pea(s) pi: 10  
 pear peə 10  
 pedestrian area pi'destriən 'eəriə 27  
 pen pen 15  
 pencil 'pensəl 15  
 pencil sharpener 'pensəl 'ʃɑ:pənə 15  
 pepper 'pepə 10  
 perfect 'pɜ:fɪkt 55  
 Peru pə'ru: 25  
 Peruvian pə'ru:vian 25  
 pet pet 29  
 petrol 'petrəl 30  
 phone fəʊn 13, 16, 19, 23  
 phone a friend fəʊn ə frend 45  
 phone box fəʊn bɒks 16  
 phone number fəʊn 'nʌmbə 16  
 photo 'fəʊtəʊ 41  
 photograph 'fəʊtəgrɑ:f 41  
 phrase freɪz 48  
 phrasebook 'freɪzbʊk 17  
 physics 'fɪzɪks 15  
 pianist 'pi:ənɪst 24  
 piano pi'ænəʊ 24  
 picture 'pɪktʃə 13  
 piece of paper pi:s əv 'peɪpə 15  
 pig pɪg 29  
 piglet 'pɪglət 29  
 pineapple 'paɪnæpəl 10  
 pitch pɪtʃ 21  
 pizza 'pi:tʃə 10  
 place pleɪs 20  
 plane pleɪn 17, 30  
 plaster 'plɑ:stə 34  
 plate pleɪt 11, 54  
 play pleɪ 21, 22, 23  
 play a musical instrument pleɪ ə 'mju:zɪkəl 'ɪnstrəmənt 24  
 please pli:z 8, 46  
 please do not walk on the grass pli:z du: nɒt wɔ:k ɒn ðə grɑ:s 27  
 plural 'pluərəl 48  
 police pə'li:s 32  
 police officer pə'li:s 'ɒfɪsə 14  
 Polish 'pəʊlɪʃ 25  
 polluted pə'lʊ:tɪd 35  
 pollution pə'lju:ʃən 35  
 pool pu:l 21  
 poor pɔ: 35  
 pop music pɒp 'mju:zɪk 24  
 pork pɔ:k 29  
 position pə'zɪʃən 52  
 positive 'pɒzətɪv 56  
 post pəʊst 16, 27  
 post office pəʊst 'ɒfɪs 18, 27  
 postcard 'pəʊskɑ:d 17  
 potato(es) pə'tetəʊ 10, 20  
 prefer prɪ'fɜ: 7  
 pre-heat pri:hi:t 58  
 preposition ,prepə'zɪʃən 48  
 pre-school pri: sku:l 58  
 present 'prezənt 51  
 pretty 'prɪti 5  
 primary school 'praɪməri sku:l 31  
 Prime Minister praɪm 'mɪnɪstə 31  
 prison 'prɪzən 32  
 private school 'praɪvɪt sku:l 31  
 problem 'prɒbləm 34, 35  
 programme 'prəʊgrəm 23, 33  
 pronoun 'prəʊnaʊn 48  
 proud of praʊd əv 57  
 pub pʌb 20  
 pull pʊl 18  
 push pʊʃ 18  
 put ... on put ɒn 4  
 put on put ɒn 34, 44  
 pyjamas pi'dʒɑ:məz 4, 12  
 queen kwɪ:n 31  
 question 'kwestʃən 48  
 quickly 'kwɪkli 59  
 quiet kwaɪət 53, 60  
 quietly 'kwaɪətli 53  
 quite kwaɪt 60  
 rabbit 'ræbɪt 29  
 radio 'reɪdiəʊ 12, 13, 23, 33  
 railway station 'reɪlweɪ 'steɪʃən 27  
 rain reɪn 26  
 rainy 'reɪni 26  
 rare reə 20  
 rarely 'reəli 51  
 razor 'reɪzə 12  
 read ri:d 13, 15, 23, 33  
 ready to order 'redi tə 'ɔ:də 20  
 reality TV ri'æləti ,ti:'vi: 33  
 really 'riəli 9  
 receipt ri'si:t 18  
 recently 'ri:səntli 51  
 reception ri'sepʃən 19  
 redo 'ri:du: 58  
 relations ri'leɪʃənz 1  
 relatives 'relətɪvz 1  
 relax ri'læks 6, 13  
 remote control ri'məʊt kən'trəʊl 13  
 repair ri'peə 34  
 reply ri'plai 46  
 reporter ri'pɔ:tə 33  
 reservation ,rezə'veɪʃən 19  
 reserve ri'zɜ:v 30  
 restaurant 'restrɒn 14, 18, 20  
 restaurant car 'restrɒn kɑ: 30  
 return ticket ri'tɜ:n 'tɪkɪt 30  
 rewrite 'ri:raɪt 58  
 rice raɪs 10, 54  
 ride raɪd 47  
 right raɪt 27, 52, 53  
 ring rɪŋ 4  
 river 'rɪvə 28  
 road rəʊd 27  
 roast beef rəʊst bi:f 31  
 roast potatoes rəʊst pə'tetəʊz 31  
 rob rɒb 32  
 robber 'rɒbə 32  
 robbery 'rɒbəri 32  
 rock rɒk 24  
 romantic rə'mæntɪk 22  
 room service 'ru:m ,sɜ:vɪs 19  
 room with a view ru:m wɪð ə vju: 19  
 routine ru:'ti:n 12

- row raʊ 34  
 royal family 'rɔɪəl 'fæməli 31  
 rubber 'rʌbə 15  
 rucksack 'rʌksæk 17  
 rug rʌɡ 13  
 rugby 'rʌɡbi 21  
 ruler 'ru:lə 15  
 run rʌn 47  
 running 'rʌnɪŋ 21  
 rush hour rʌʃaʊə 35  
 sad sæd 7  
 sadness 'sædnəs 59  
 sailing 'seɪlɪŋ 21  
 salad 'sæləd 20  
 salmon fillet 'sæmən 'fɪlɪt 20  
 salt sɔ:l 10  
 sandy 'sændi 59  
 Saturday 'sætədeɪ 50  
 saucepan 'sɔ:spən 11  
 say seɪ 46  
 scarf skɑ:f 4  
 school sku:l 15  
 science fiction saɪəns 'fɪkʃən 22  
 Scottish 'skɒtɪʃ 25  
 screen skri:n 16  
 season 'si:zən 50  
 seat si:t 30  
 second 'sekənd 18, 50  
 secondary school 'sekəndri sku:l 31  
 secretary 'sekrətəri 14  
 see si: 22, 23  
 see you soon si: ju: su:n 8  
 selfish 'selfɪʃ 56  
 sell sel 32  
 sell drugs sel drʌɡz 32  
 send send 17  
 send a text (message) send ə tekst 16  
 sentence 'sentəns 48  
 separated 'sepəreɪtɪd 2  
 September sep'tembə 50  
 shampoo ʃæm'pu: 12  
 sheep ʃi:p 29  
 shelf ʃelf 11, 12  
 ship ʃɪp 30  
 shirt ʃɜ:t 4  
 shoe(s) ʃu: 4, 54  
 shop ʃɒp 14, 18, 27  
 shop assistant ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt 14  
 shoplifter ʃɒplɪftə 32  
 shoplifting ʃɒplɪftɪŋ 32  
 shopping 'ʃɒpɪŋ 18  
 shopping centre 'ʃɒpɪŋ 'sentə 27  
 short ʃɔ:t 5  
 shorts ʃɔ:ts 4  
 shoulder 'ʃəʊldə 3  
 shower ʃaʊə 12, 19, 36  
 shower gel ʃaʊə gel 12  
 sick sɪk 6  
 side saɪd 3, 27, 52  
 sign saɪn 18, 19  
 single 'sɪŋɡəl 2  
 single room 'sɪŋɡəl ru:m 19  
 single ticket 'sɪŋɡəl 'tɪkɪt 30  
 singular 'sɪŋɡjələ 48  
 sink sɪŋk 11  
 sister 'sɪstə 1  
 size saɪz 18  
 ski ski: 28  
 skin skɪn 3, 5  
 skirt skɜ:t 4  
 sleep sli:p 23  
 sleep well sli:p wel 8  
 slim slɪm 5  
 slow sləʊ 53  
 slowly 'sləʊli 53  
 snack snæk 20  
 snake sneɪk 29  
 sneeze sni:z 6  
 snow snəʊ 26  
 snowboarding 'snəʊbɔ:dɪŋ 21  
 snowstorm 'snəʊstɔ:m 35  
 snowy 'snəʊi 26  
 so səʊ 49  
 soap səʊp 12  
 soap opera 'səʊp,ɒpərə 33  
 socket 'sɒkɪt 13  
 socks sɒks 4  
 sofa 'səʊfə 13  
 sometimes 'sʌmtaɪmz 51  
 son sʌn 1  
 song sɒŋ 24  
 soon su:n 51  
 sorry 'sɒri 8  
 soup (of the day) su:p 20  
 South Africa saʊθ 'æfrɪkə 25  
 South African saʊθ 'æfrɪkən 25  
 South America saʊθ ə'merɪkə 25  
 spaghetti spə'geti 54  
 Spain speɪn 25  
 Spanish 'spænɪʃ 25  
 speak spi:k 46  
 speak to spi:k tə 16  
 spoon spu:n 11  
 sports spɔ:ts 21, 33  
 sports centre spɔ:ts 'sentə 21  
 spring sprɪŋ 50  
 stamp stæmp 16  
 starter 'stɑ:tə 20  
 state school steɪt sku:l 31  
 station 'steɪʃən 27  
 stay steɪ 23  
 steak steɪk 20  
 steal sti:l 32  
 stomach 'stʌmək 3  
 storm stɔ:m 26  
 strawberry (-ies) 'strɔ:bəri 10  
 stress stres 6  
 strike straɪk 35  
 student 'stju:dənt 15  
 study 'stʌdi 15  
 stupid 'stju:pɪd 56  
 subject 'sʌbdʒɪkt 15  
 sugar 'ʃʊɡə 10, 54  
 suit su:t 4  
 suitcase 'su:tkeɪs 17  
 summer 'sʌmə 50  
 sun sʌn 26  
 Sunday 'sʌndeɪ 50  
 sunglasses 'sʌn,ɡlɑ:sɪz 4  
 sunny 'sʌni 26, 59  
 supermarket 'su:pə,ma:kɪt 18  
 surprised sə'praɪzɪd 7  
 sweater 'swetə 4  
 swim swɪm 36, 47  
 swimmer 'swɪmə 59  
 swimming 'swɪmɪŋ 21  
 swimming pool 'swɪmɪŋ pu:l 21  
 switch on swɪtʃ ɒn 13  
 table 'teɪbəl 13  
 table tennis 'teɪbəl 'tenɪs 21  
 take teɪk 32, 42, 47  
 take (some) lessons teɪk 'lesənz 41

- take ... for a walk teik fɔ: ə wɔ:k 29  
take ... off teik ɒf 4  
take a course teik ə kɔ:s 41  
take a message teik ə 'mesɪdʒ 16  
take a photo teik ə 'fəʊtəʊ 41  
take a taxi teik ə 'tæksi 41  
take an exam teik ən ɪg'zæm 15, 41  
take drugs teik drʌgz 32  
take off teik ɒf 30, 44  
take the bus teik ðə bʌs 41  
take the train teik ðə treɪn 41  
take the underground teik ðə 'ʌndəgraʊnd 41  
take-away teik ə'weɪ 20  
talk tɔ:k 23, 46  
talk show tɔ:k ʃəʊ 33  
tall tɔ:l 5  
tap tæp 11  
tape recorder teɪp rɪ'kɔ:də 15  
taxi 'tæksi 30, 41  
taxi driver 'tæksi 'draɪvə 14  
tea ti: 10, 36, 54  
tea towel ti: təʊəl 11  
teach ti:tʃ 15  
teacher 'ti:tʃə 14, 15  
teapot 'ti:pɒt 11  
teenage 'ti:neɪdʒ 33  
teeth ti:θ 3  
telephone (phone) 'telɪfəʊn 12, 16  
television (TV) 'telɪvɪʒən 12, 13  
tell (someone) a joke tel ə dʒəʊk 46  
tell (someone) a story tel ə 'stɔ:ri 46  
tell (someone) the time tel ðə taɪm 46  
tell someone your address tel 'sʌmwʌn jɔ:r ə'dres 46  
tell someone your name tel 'sʌmwʌn jɔ: neɪm 46  
tell someone your phone number tel 'sʌmwʌn jɔ: fəʊn 'nʌmbə 46  
tennis 'tenɪs 21  
terrible 'terəbəl 55  
terrorism 'terərɪzəm 32  
terrorist 'terərɪst 32  
text tekst 16  
textbook 'teksbuk 15  
Thai taɪ 25  
Thailand 'taɪlənd 25  
than ðæn 49  
thank for θæŋk fɔ: 57  
thank you θæŋk ju: 8, 46  
thanks θæŋks 8  
then ðen 51  
there ðeə 52  
thin θɪn 5  
think about θɪŋk ə'baʊt 57  
third θɜ:d 18  
thirsty 'θɜ:sti 7  
thriller 'θrɪlə 22  
thumb θʌm 3  
thunder 'θʌndə 26, 26  
thunderstorm 'θʌndəstɔ:m 26  
thundery 'θʌndəri 26  
Thursday 'θɜ:zdeɪ 50  
ticket 'tɪkɪt 30  
tidy 'taɪdi 34  
tie taɪ 4  
tiger 'taɪgə 29  
tights taɪts 4  
timetable 'taɪm,tetɪbəl 30  
(four) times a month taɪmz ə mʌnθ 51  
(three) times a week taɪmz ə wi:k 45  
tired taɪəd 7  
today tə'deɪ 50, 51  
toe təʊ 3  
toilet 'tɔɪlət 12  
tomato(es) tə'mɑ:təʊ 10  
tomorrow tə'mɒrəʊ 50, 51  
too tu: 49  
too much tu: mʌtʃ 34  
tooth tu:θ 3  
toothache 'tu:θeɪk 6  
toothbrush 'tu:θbrʌʃ 12  
toothpaste 'tu:θpeɪst 12  
top tɒp 52  
tortoise 'tɔ:təs 29  
tourist (information) office 'tʊərɪst 'ɒfɪs 27  
towel təʊəl 12  
town taʊn 27, 28  
town hall taʊn hɔ:l 27  
toys tɔɪz 18  
traffic 'træfɪk 54  
traffic jam 'træfɪk dʒæm 35  
traffic warden 'træfɪk 'wɔ:dən 14  
train treɪn 14, 17, 27, 30  
trainers 'treɪnəz 4  
train station treɪn 'steɪʃən 27  
transport 'trænspɔ:t 47  
travel 'trævəl 54  
traveller's cheques 'trævələz tʃeks 17  
travelling 'trævəlɪŋ 30  
tropical 'trɒpɪkəl 6  
trousers 'traʊzəz 4  
trumpet 'trʌmpɪt 24  
trumpet-player 'trʌmpɪt 'pleɪə 24  
try on traɪ ɒn 18  
T-shirt 'ti:ʃɜ:t 4  
Tuesday 'tju:zdeɪ 50  
Tunisia tju:'nɪziə 25  
Tunisian tju:'nɪziən 25  
turn tɜ:n 27  
turn down tɜ:n daʊn 44  
turn off tɜ:n ɒf 12, 13, 44  
turn on tɜ:n ɒn 13, 44  
turn up tɜ:n ʌp 44  
TV ,ti:'vi: 13, 19, 22, 23, 33  
twice twaɪs 51  
ugly 'ʌgli 5  
UK ,ju:'keɪ 25  
umbrella ʌm'brelə 4  
uncle 'ʌŋkəl 1  
uncountable ʌn'kaʊntəbəl 54  
underground 'ʌndəgraʊnd 30  
unemployed ,ʌnɪm'plɔɪd 35  
unfriendly ʌn'frendli 53  
unhappy ʌn'hæpi 56, 58  
United States (the US) ju:,naɪtɪd'steɪts 25  
university ,ju:nɪ'vɜ:səti 15  
unsafe ʌn'seɪf 58  
untidy ʌn'taɪdi 34  
upset ʌp'set 7  
upstairs ʌp'steəz 12  
USA ,ju:es'eɪ 25  
useful 'ju:sfəl 59  
useless 'ju:sləs 59



usually 'ju:zəli 45, 51  
Valentine's Day 'væləntaɪnz  
deɪ 31  
vandal 'vændəl 32  
vandalism 'vændəlɪzəm 32  
vegetable(s) 'vedʒtəbəl 10,  
20  
vegetarian ,vedʒɪ'teəriən  
10  
verb vɜ:b 48  
very 'veri 55  
village 'vɪlɪdʒ 28  
violin ,vaɪə'lɪn 24  
violinist vaɪə'lɪnɪst 24  
visa 'vi:zə 17  
voicemail 'vɔɪsmel 16  
volleyball 'vɒlibɔ:l 21  
waist weɪst 3  
wait for weɪt fɔ: 57, 60  
waiter 'weɪtə 14  
wake up weɪk ʌp 12, 45  
wake-up call weɪk ʌp kɔ:l  
19  
walk wɔ:k 28, 47  
walking holiday 'wɔ:kɪŋ  
'hɒlədeɪ 17  
want wɒnt 7  
war wɔ: 35  
wardrobe 'wɔ:drəʊb 12  
wash wɒʃ 3  
wash clothes wɒʃ kləʊðz  
45  
washing machine 'wɒʃɪŋ  
mə'ʃi:n 11  
washing-up liquid 'wɒʃɪŋ ʌp  
'lɪkwɪd 11  
watch wɒtʃ 4, 13, 22, 23,  
33, 45  
water 'wɔ:tə 29, 34, 54  
way weɪ 53  
wear weə 4  
weather 'weðə 26, 54  
wedding 'wedɪŋ 2  
Wednesday 'wenzdeɪ 50  
week wɪ:k 50  
weekend ,wɪ:k'end 50  
weigh wei 2, 5  
weight weɪt 5  
well wel 6, 7, 53  
well done wel dʌn 8, 9  
well-behaved ,welbɪ'heɪvd  
56  
well-done ,wel'dʌn 20  
western 'westən 22

wet wet 26  
what a pity wɒt ə'pɪti 9  
What about ...? wɒt ə'baʊt  
9  
What time do you ....? wɒt  
taɪm də ju: 45  
What's his/her job? wɒts  
hɪz/hɜ: dʒɒb 14  
What's on ...? wɒts ɒn 22  
What's on TV? wɒts ɒn  
,tɪ:'vi: 33  
What's the weather like?  
wɒts ðə 'weðə laɪk 26  
What's your favourite  
...? wɒts jɔ: 'feɪvərɪt 21  
when wen 49  
Where can I find ...? weə  
kən aɪ faɪnd 11  
Where does ... go? weə dəz  
gəʊ 11  
Where is ...? weər ɪz 27  
Why don't ...? waɪ dəʊnt  
9  
widowed 'wɪdəʊd 2  
wife waɪf 1  
wild animal waɪld 'ænɪməl  
29  
wildlife 'waɪldlaɪf 28  
wind wɪnd 26  
window 'wɪndəʊ 13  
windy 'wɪndi 26  
wine waɪn 10  
wine list waɪn lɪst 20  
winter 'wɪntə 50  
winter holiday 'wɪntə  
'hɒlədeɪ 17  
women's wear wɪmɪnz  
weə 18  
wonderful 'wʌndəfəl 55,  
56  
wood wud 28  
wool wul 29  
work wɜ:k 14, 34, 54  
worker 'wɜ:kə 59  
worktop 'wɜ:ktɒp 11  
Would you like ...? wud ju:  
laɪk 20  
write raɪt 15  
write emails raɪt i:meɪlz  
45  
write letters raɪt 'letəz 45  
wrong rɒŋ 53  
year jɪə 50, 51  
yesterday 'jestədeɪ 50

Yorkshire pudding 'jɔ:kʃə  
'puɪdɪŋ 31  
young jʌŋ 5  
zoo zu: 29

# Irregular verbs

Most verbs in English are regular but some of the most common verbs in English are irregular. The forms here are the infinitive (*go, come*), the past simple (*went, came*) and the past participle (*gone, come*).

## A All forms the same

cost cost cost

cut /kʌt/ cut cut

hurt hurt hurt

let let let

put /pʊt/ put put

shut /ʃʌt/ shut shut

## B Two different forms

beat beat beaten

become became become

bring brought brought

buy bought bought

catch caught caught

come came come

feel felt felt

fight fought fought

find found found

get got got

have had had

hear heard heard

keep kept kept

leave left left

learn learnt learnt

lose lost lost

make made made

meet met met

pay paid /peɪd/ paid

read /ri:d/ read /red/ read /red/

run ran run

say said /sed/ said

sell sold sold

shine shone shone

shoot shot shot

sit sat sat

sleep slept slept

spend spent spent

stand stood stood

teach taught taught

tell told told

think thought thought

win won won

understand understood understood

### C Three different forms

be	was / were	been
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
choose	chose	chosen
do	did	done
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
know	knew	known
ride	rode	ridden
rise	rose	risen
sing	sang	sung
speak	spoke	spoken
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
throw	threw	thrown
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
write	wrote	written

#### Tip

When you learn a new irregular verb, add it to one of the groups of verbs on these pages.

# How to learn vocabulary

To learn a lot of vocabulary, you have to do different things.

- 1 Study each unit of the book carefully and do all the exercises. Check your answers with your teacher. Repeat the units after a month, and then again after three months, and see how much you have learnt and how much you have forgotten. Repeating work is very important.
- 2 Keep a vocabulary notebook. Students who regularly make notes in a separate notebook often do better in tests and examinations than students who do not keep a notebook.
- 3 Use different ways of recording things in your notebook. For example, every time you see or hear an interesting phrase, write it in your notebook, and write who said it or wrote it, and in what situation, as well as what it means. Here are some examples:

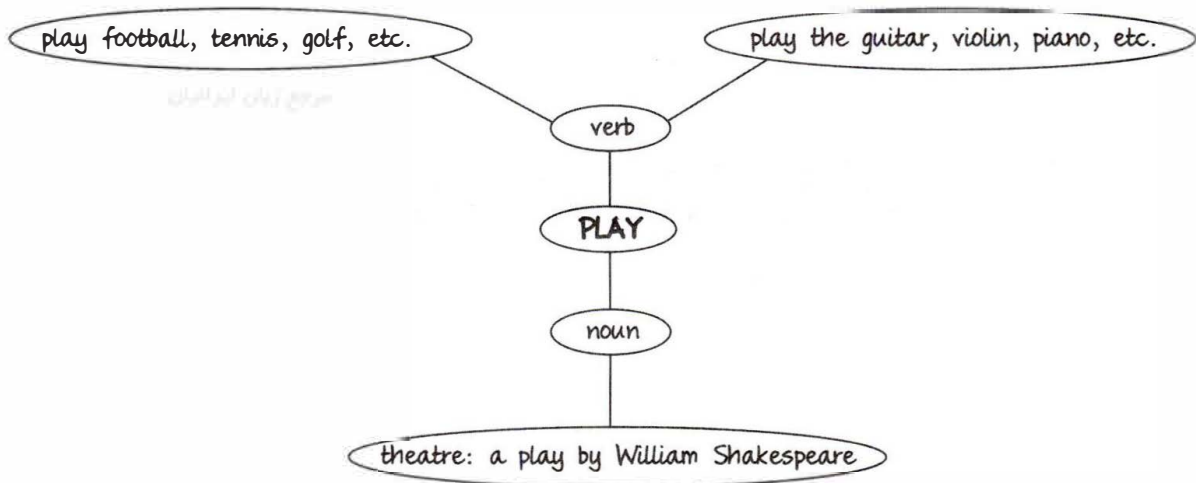
**ready:** (person at the door of a theatre, to all the people waiting) 'Have your tickets ready, please!' = have your ticket in your hand

**else:** (person in a restaurant) 'Would you like anything else?' = more or in addition or different

**rush hour:** (person who is about to leave home for work) 'I'm going early so that I miss the rush hour' = the times when there are lots of people travelling to work in the morning or when people are travelling home in the evening

Making notes of the situations words are used in will help you to remember them and to use them at the right moment.

- 4 Use diagrams and other visual aids to help you learn and remember words and phrases. Word bubbles are very easy to draw and can help you remember the different meanings and uses of words. Here is an example for the word *play*, which can be a verb or a noun:



Charts can also help you to organise information about words. This student has made notes in her vocabulary notebook about useful verbs and the nouns we use them with:

take	a taxi a message violin lessons	catch	a cold a criminal a ball	make	dinner a mistake an appointment	do	my homework somebody a favour my best (to)
------	---------------------------------------	-------	--------------------------------	------	---------------------------------------	----	--

# How to use the *English Vocabulary in Use Elementary* CD-ROM to learn vocabulary

Your copy of *English Vocabulary in Use Elementary* comes with a CD-ROM. You can use the CD-ROM to improve your English vocabulary. These two pages answer some common questions about the CD-ROM.

## What is on the CD-ROM?

The CD-ROM contains:

- two practice activities for each unit of the book (120 in total)
- two vocabulary games, *Word Challenger* and *Falling Letters*
- a test maker
- a record and play-back function
- a dictionary function.

## When should I use the CD-ROM?

You can use the CD-ROM before or after you do a unit in the book. This section will give you some suggestions.

### Using the CD-ROM before you look at a unit in the book

The CD-ROM can help you discover how much vocabulary you already know about a topic. Try this:

- Choose a topic from the *Exercises* menu, for example *Food and drink* in the *At home* section.
- Complete the two exercises. After each exercise, click *Check your answers* to see how many questions you got right. Make a note of any words you found difficult.
- Now go to the relevant unit of the book. Study the notes on the left-hand page. Try to find the words you didn't know from the CD-ROM. Complete the exercises on the right-hand page.
- Finally, return to the CD-ROM. Look at the *My progress* section. Can you improve your score this time? Complete the two exercises again for the same unit.

### Using the CD-ROM after you look at a unit in the book

The CD-ROM can help you to remember words you learnt from the book. This kind of revision is very important if you want to remember vocabulary. Try this:

- When you complete a unit from the book, write the date at the top of the page.
- One week later, go to the CD-ROM and do the two exercises from that unit. How much vocabulary can you remember? Make a note of any words you found difficult or couldn't remember.
- Go back to the unit in the book and look for the words you didn't know. Study the words again.
- Finally, return to the CD-ROM and complete the two exercises again. Did you remember those difficult words?

The CD-ROM can also help you test yourself. You can even personalise the tests to cover the topics that *you* want to practise. Try this:

- When you finish a group of units in the book (for example, the nine units in the *People* section), go to the CD-ROM and make a test on the vocabulary from those units. The CD-ROM will create five test questions from each of those units. For an extra challenge, use the time limit function. If your score is low, look at the units again. Then create a new test and try to improve your score.
- Alternatively, create a test when you have completed the whole book. Choose units at random or concentrate on units that you found difficult.

### Can the CD-ROM help me with my pronunciation?

Yes, it can. The CD-ROM has a record and play-back function which you can use to practise your pronunciation. Try this:

- When you have completed an exercise on the CD-ROM, click the green arrow to hear a model pronunciation of the words or sentences.
- Then click the red *Record your voice* button at the bottom of the screen. Practise saying the word or sentence.
- Now click the green *Play your voice* arrow at the bottom of the screen. Does your pronunciation sound correct? Listen to the model pronunciation again to check.
- Record your voice again if necessary.

### Can I use the CD-ROM for fun?

Yes, of course! We hope you will find all of the exercises fun. However, there are also two games which can help you to practise vocabulary in a fun way.

- In *Word Challenger*, you score points by choosing the correct word for the picture. This game can help you to remember what words mean. You can make the game easier or harder by using the different options. If you write down your score after each game, you can try to improve it next time.
- In *Falling Letters*, you can practise listening and spelling. Try to score as many points as you can in the time available. Write down your score and try to improve it next time.

Both these games are quick and fun. Just playing for five or ten minutes a day can help you to remember more vocabulary. And to make things even more fun, you can have a competition with a friend. Who can score the most points?

### What else can the CD-ROM do?

Remember that the CD-ROM also has a dictionary function. You can use it to look up any words that you don't know. You will need an internet connection for this.

Also remember that you can check your progress at any time using the *Progress* section. This will help you to see which exercises you have completed. It can also show you areas where you need more practice. In those cases, go back to the book and study the left-hand pages again.

We hope you enjoy using the *English Vocabulary in Use Elementary* CD-ROM.

# English Vocabulary in Use

## Elementary

Second Edition

Do you want to improve your vocabulary quickly? *English Vocabulary in Use* is fully aligned to the needs of English language learners at A2 level, so will help you learn the words and phrases you require. This second edition of the best-selling vocabulary book is ideal for self-study, but can also be used in the classroom. It now offers:

- Fully updated units informed by the English Profile wordlists, so you learn the most important vocabulary at upper-intermediate level
- New words presented and explained in context, so that you can clearly see how to use them
- Lots of opportunities for personalised practice, to help with the learning process
- A common mistakes feature which helps you avoid frequent errors

A2 English Profile www.englishprofile.org	
CEFR level:	Cambridge ESOL exams:
	English vocabulary in USE
C1	Advanced Advanced (CAE)
B2	Upper-Intermediate First (FCE)
B1 +	Intermediate Preliminary (PET)
B1	Pre-intermediate
A2	Elementary Key (KET)
A1	Starter

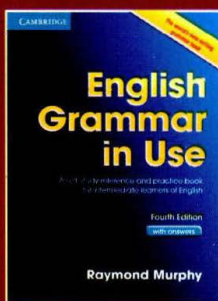
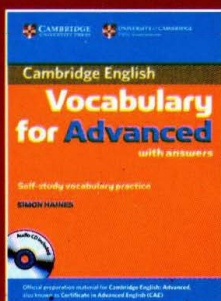
On the CD-ROM:

- Two extra exercises for each unit
- Personalised, printable tests – ideal for exam practice
- Audio recordings for every exercise, providing extra listening practice

For Windows® XP, Vista or Windows® 7 and Mac OSX 10.5, 10.6 or 10.7

[www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse](http://www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse)

مرجع زبان ایرانیان  
[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)



**CAMBRIDGE ENGLISH CORPUS**

The Cambridge English Corpus is a multi-billion word collection of written and spoken English. It includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique bank of exam candidate papers.

Our authors study the Corpus to see how English is really used, and to identify typical learner mistakes. This means that Cambridge materials help students to avoid mistakes, and you can be confident the language taught is useful, natural and fully up to date.

[www.cambridge.org/corpus](http://www.cambridge.org/corpus)

**CAMBRIDGE QUALITY GUARANTEE**



**CAMBRIDGE**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

